

# ARABIC

*in 10 minutes a day*<sup>®</sup>

A complete  
language-  
learning kit!



Bilingual Books, Inc.

# The Concept

Do a little bit every day! The **10 minutes a day**<sup>®</sup> approach is designed for you to succeed. What is important is that you spend a little time every day on your new language.

Let the process be fun. There is no set speed or time limit. You set the pace. If you are enjoying what you are learning, don't stop even if you have been working for an hour. We wish you all the success in the world in learning your new language.

## Contents

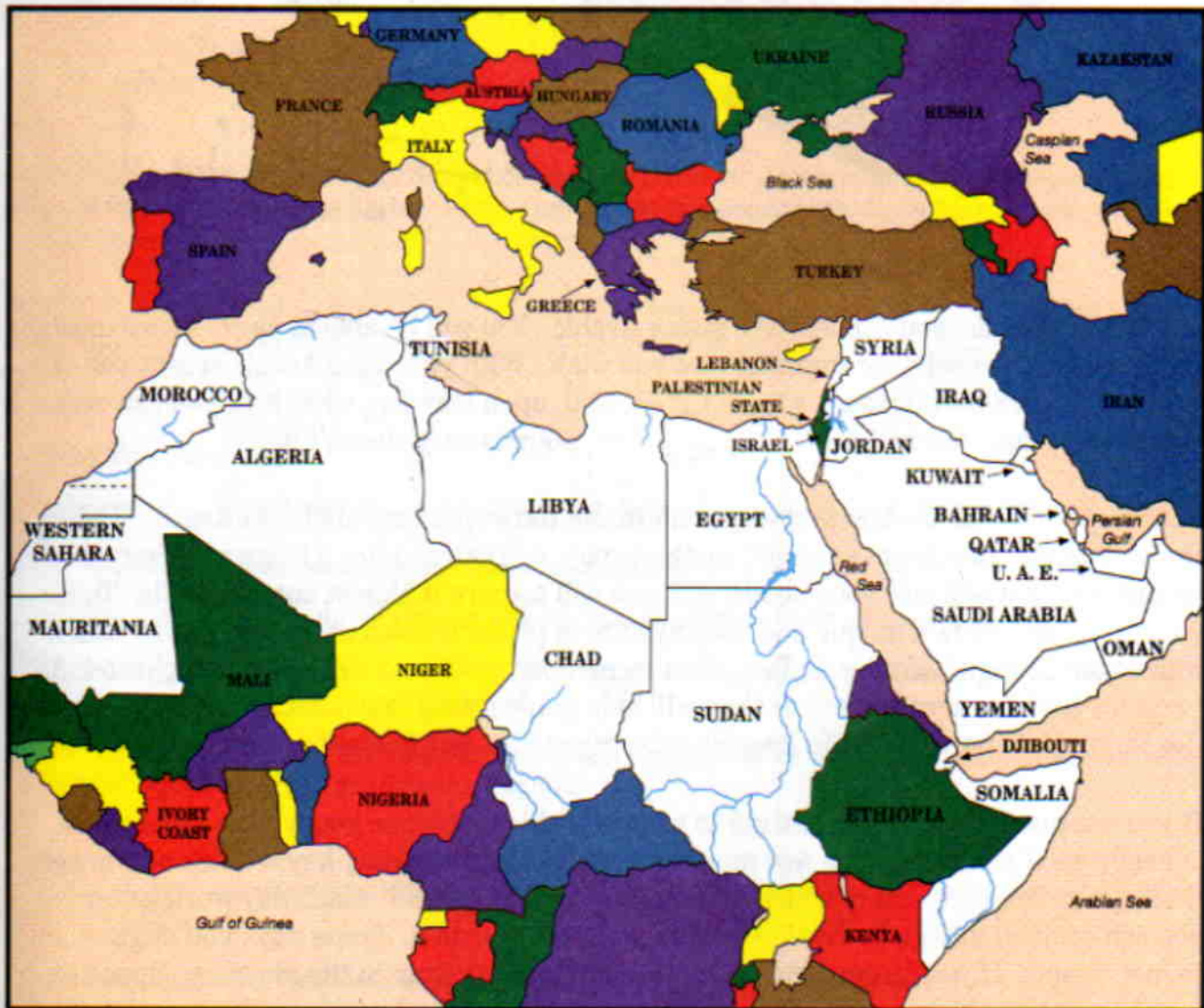
Alphabet, Pronunciation Guide .....	3
Key Question Words .....	5
Look Around You in Your Home .....	9
Numbers .....	12
Colors .....	15
Sticky Labels .....	17
Money and More Numbers .....	19
Days of the Week, Greetings .....	22
Months, Seasons, Temperatures .....	28
Family, Home, Religion .....	31
A Few Verbs .....	39
What Time Is It? .....	46
Directions, Finding Places .....	52
Upstairs, Downstairs .....	56
Post Office, Mail .....	63
Traffic Signs, Conversion Tables .....	67
Paying Bills .....	69
Traveling, Getting Around .....	76
Dining, Menu .....	86
Telephone .....	93
Transportation .....	96
Shopping .....	99
Packing, Getting Ready to Go .....	102
Glossary .....	108
Beverage and Menu Guides .....	116
Flash Cards .....	119

# ARABIC

*in 10 minutes a day*<sup>®</sup>

Author: Kristine K. Kershul

Consultant: Amina Moujtahid, M.A., Mohamed V University, Rabat, Morocco



**Bilingual Books, Inc.**

1719 West Nickerson Street, Seattle, WA 98119

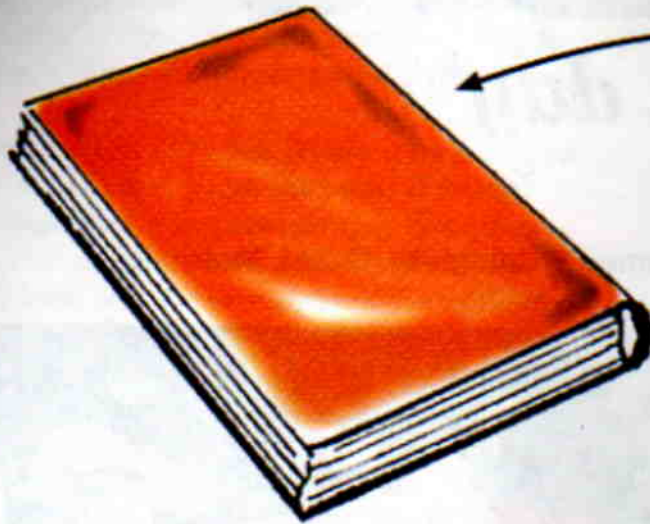
Tel: (206) 284-4211 • Fax: (206) 284-3660

[www.10minutesaday.com](http://www.10minutesaday.com)

ISBN-13: 978-0-944502-40-2 ISBN-10: 0-944502-40-7

Copyright © 2004 Bilingual Books, Inc., Seattle, WA. First edition. Second printing, June 2005. All rights reserved.

# Can you say this?



(*heh-daa*) (*maa*)

ما هذا؟ ←

this what (is)

(*kee-taab*) (*heh-daa*)

هذا كتاب. ←

(a) book this (is)

(*al-kee-taab*) (*oo-ree-do*)

أريدُ الكتاب. ←

the book I want

If you can say this, you can learn to speak Arabic. You will be able to easily order meals, concert tickets, snacks, or anything else you wish. With your best Arabic accent you simply ask (*heh-daa*) (*maa*) "ما هذا؟" ← and, upon learning what it is, you can order it with (*heh-daa*) (*oo-ree-do*) "أريدُ هذا." ← Sounds easy, doesn't it?

The purpose of this book is to give you an **immediate** speaking ability in Arabic. Using the acclaimed "10 minutes a day®" methodology, you will acquire a large working vocabulary that will suit your needs, and you will acquire it almost automatically. To aid you, this book offers a unique and easy system of pronunciation above each word which walks you through learning Arabic. Just remember, you read Arabic from right to left. Look for the blue arrows (←) as they will help you develop this habit. Remember to read the English phonetics and the English subscripts from left to right as usual!

If you are planning a trip or moving to where Arabic is spoken, you will be leaps ahead of everyone if you take just a few minutes a day to learn the easy key words and phrases that this book offers. Start with Step 1 and don't skip around. Each day work as far as you can comfortably go in those 10 minutes. Don't overdo it. Some days you might want to just review. If you forget a word, you can always look it up in the glossary. Spend your first 10 minutes studying the map on the previous page. And yes, have fun learning your new language.

As you work through the Steps, always use the special features which only the "10 minutes a day®" Series offers. This Series includes sticky labels and flash cards, puzzles and quizzes. Plus, when you have completed the book, cut out the menu guide at the back and take it along on your trip.

When you first see words like **كِتَاب** and **مِصْر** Arabic can appear forbidding. However, Arabic is a logical language once you learn how to decode these letters and you remember to read from right to left. A wide variety of regional Arabic dialects is spoken. Key is that you learn the standard Arabic presented in this book, and at the same time are prepared for variations in pronunciation depending upon where your travels take you.

In these letters, the dots are the only way to differentiate one letter from another.

(q) (f) ف ق	(z) (r) ر ز	(sh) (s) س ش	(n) (b) ب ن	(varies) (') ع غ
(Th) (T) ط ظ	(D) (ss) ص ض	(lh/d) (d) د ذ	(ee) (aa/ah) ي ي	(varies) (H) (zh) ح خ ج

Vowels in Arabic look like dashes or symbols above or below the Arabic letters. These vowels make it easier for you to pronounce Arabic. Later when you are more comfortable with the language you will not need them anymore.



### Hints, Tips and Guidance:

- Sometimes we will include two sets of words as both are commonly used. It doesn't hurt to learn both!
- You will encounter masculine and feminine words indicated by (♂) and (♀).
- Some Arabic letters do not connect with the following letter. Don't let it surprise you.
- When you see the letter "r" or "L" or "n" in the phonetics, pronounce the letter just as you would if you were spelling out a word in English.
- You will see some English words in parentheses underneath the Arabic. This indicates there isn't a corresponding Arabic word for the English.

◌◌ a marker doubling (lengthening) the sound of the letter

ة/ة pronounced "ah" except when linked to the next word and pronounced "t"

◌◌ a special ending with the pronunciation "ahn"

(la) ◌◌ the combination of ل = ل + ل ←

Certain combinations of letters and vowels will create completely different sounds than you might anticipate. Just try to learn the words as you see them and eventually these patterns will emerge.

On the next page you will find a listing of all Arabic letters in Arabic alphabetical order. Many Arabic letters change their appearance depending upon whether they are at the beginning of a word, the middle or the end. Practice, practice, practice and then practice some more!

Carefully designed phonetics appear above each word to help you learn to pronounce the Arabic. Sometimes the phonetics may seem to contradict this pronunciation guide. Don't panic. The easiest and best possible phonetics have been chosen for each individual word. Pronounce the phonetics just as you seen them. Don't over-analyze them. Speak with an Arabic accent and, above all, enjoy yourself.

English Sound	Arabic			Arabic Letter
	Final	Medial	Initial	
ah / eh / aa	ا	ا	ا	ا
b	ب	ب	ب	ب
t	ت	ت	ت	ت
th (as in think)	ث	ث	ث	ث
zh / j	ج	ج	ج	ج
H <sup>ⓐ</sup>	ح	ح	ح	ح
h / hk / kh <sup>ⓑ</sup>	خ	خ	خ	خ
d	د	د	د	د
th (as in this) / d	ذ	ذ	ذ	ذ
r (rolled)	ر	ر	ر	ر
z	ز	ز	ز	ز
s	س	س	س	س
sh	ش	ش	ش	ش
ss (strong)	ص	ص	ص	ص
D (emphatic d)	ض	ض	ض	ض
T (emphatic t)	ط	ط	ط	ط
Th (emphatic th)	ظ	ظ	ظ	ظ
' <sup>ⓐ</sup> / almost an "r" sound	ع	ع	ع	ع
gh / gr / r <sup>ⓑ</sup>	غ	غ	غ	غ
f	ف	ف	ف	ف
q / k <sup>ⓐ</sup>	ق	ق	ق	ق
k	ك	ك	ك	ك
l	ل	ل	ل	ل
m	م	م	م	م
n	ن	ن	ن	ن
h	ه	ه	ه	ه
w / oo (as in boat)	و	و	و	و
ee / y (as in yes)	ي	ي	ي	ي
varies <sup>ⓐ</sup>				ء

ⓐ strongly aspirated as if you were blowing out a candle from the back of your throat  
 ⓑ breathe hard, almost like gargling, or think of the *ch* in the Scottish word *loch*  
 ⓓ glottal stop, like the pause in *uh-oh*

ⓔ sound you make when you gargle  
 ⓕ raise at the back of your throat  
 ⓖ may be a short pause like a silent musical beat

# Key Question Words

When you arrive in an Arabic-speaking country such as <sup>(al-oor-dooq)</sup>الأردن ← <sup>(meess-ur)</sup>مصر ← <sup>(al-ma-greb)</sup>المغرب ← or

<sup>(loob-naan)</sup>لبنان ← the very first thing you will need to do is ask questions — “Where is the bus stop?”

“Where can I exchange money?” “Where <sup>(eye-na)</sup>(أَيْنَ) ← is the lavatory?” “<sup>(eye-na)</sup>أَيْنَ ← is a restaurant?”

“<sup>(eye-na)</sup>أَيْنَ ← is a taxi?” “<sup>(eye-na)</sup>أَيْنَ ← is a good hotel?” “<sup>(eye-na)</sup>أَيْنَ ← is my luggage?” and the list will go on

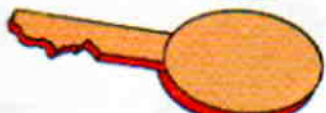
and on for the entire length of your visit. In Arabic, there are many question words, but let’s focus on these EIGHT KEY QUESTION WORDS. For example, the eight key question words will help you find out exactly what you are ordering in a restaurant before you order it — and not after the

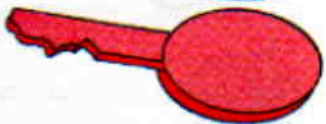
surprise (or shock!) arrives. Take a few minutes to study and practice saying the eight key


question words listed below. Then cover <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup>العربية ← and fill in each of the blanks with the


matching Arabic <sup>(ka-lee-ma)</sup>كلمة ←  
word


\_\_\_\_\_ WHERE = <sup>(eye-na)</sup>أَيْنَ ← 


\_\_\_\_\_ WHAT = <sup>(may-daa)</sup>ماذا / <sup>(maa)</sup>ما ← 


مَنْ مَنْ مَنْ مَنْ مَنْ WHO = <sup>(men)</sup>مَنْ ← 

\_\_\_\_\_ WHEN = <sup>(meh-ta)</sup>متى ← 

\_\_\_\_\_ HOW = <sup>(kay-fa)</sup>كيف ← 

\_\_\_\_\_ WHY = <sup>(lee-may-daa)</sup>لماذا ← 

\_\_\_\_\_ HOW MANY = <sup>(kem)</sup>كم ← 

\_\_\_\_\_ HOW MUCH (price) = <sup>(be-kem)</sup>بكم ← 

Now test yourself to see if you really can keep these <sup>(ka-lee-maat)</sup> **كلمات** ← straight in your mind. Draw

lines between <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> **العَرَبِيَّة** ← and the English equivalents below.



how much  
why  
what  
who  
how  
where  
when  
how many

<sup>(maa)</sup> ما ←  
<sup>(kay-fa)</sup> كَيْفَ ←  
<sup>(be-kem)</sup> بِكُمْ ←  
<sup>(eye-na)</sup> أَيْنَ ←  
<sup>(lee-may-daa)</sup> لِمَاذَا ←  
<sup>(meh-ta)</sup> مَتَى ←  
<sup>(kem)</sup> كَمَ ←  
<sup>(men)</sup> مَنَ ←



Examine the following questions containing these <sup>(ka-lee-maat)</sup> **كلمات** ←. Practice the sentences out loud

<sup>(wa)</sup> **وَ** ← then practice by copying <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> **العَرَبِيَّة** ← in the blanks underneath each question.



<sup>(heh-daa)</sup> **هَذَا؟** ← <sup>(maa)</sup> **مَا** ←  
this what (is)



<sup>(Haa-lik)</sup> **حَالِك؟** ← <sup>(kay-fa)</sup> **كَيْفَ** ←  
are you (I) how



<sup>(heh-daa)</sup> **هَذَا؟** ← <sup>(eye-na)</sup> **أَيْنَ** ←  
this where (is)



<sup>(naa-koo-foo)</sup> **نَاكُلُ؟** ← <sup>(meh-ta)</sup> **مَتَى** ←  
do we eat when



<sup>(heh-da-he)</sup> **هَذِهِ؟** ← <sup>(be-kem)</sup> **بِكُمْ** ←  
this how much



<sup>(hoo-sea)</sup> **هُوَ؟** ← <sup>(men)</sup> **مَنَ** ←  
he who (is)

<sup>(eye-na)</sup> **“أَيْنَ؟”** ← will be your most used question <sup>(ka-lee-ma)</sup> **كَلِمَةً** ←. Say each of the following <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> **العَرَبِيَّة** ←

sentences aloud. Then write out each sentence many times. This is a great way to practice your Arabic handwriting! Repeat each sentence until you are comfortable with it. The blue arrows are

6 there to remind you to read and write from right to left!



(ah-kaam-maam) } الحَمَامُ؟  
the toilet  
(al-meer-Haad) } المِرْحاضُ  
the lavatory

(eye-na) أين  
where (is)

(ah-taak-see) (eye-na) أين التَّكْسِي؟  
the taxi where (is)

(al-Haa-fee-la) } الحافِلة؟  
the bus  
(al-oo-too-bees) } الأوتوبِيس؟  
the bus

(eye-na) أين  
where (is)



أَيْنَ

أَيْنَ

(al-ma-Tahm) (eye-na) أين المَطْعَمُ؟  
the restaurant where

(al-bahnk) (eye-na) أين البَنْكُ؟  
the bank where

(al-foon-dooq) (eye-na) أين الفَنْدُقُ؟  
the hotel where



(na-ahm) نَعَمْ you can hear similarities between (al-r-ra-be-ya) العَرَبِيَّة and (al-een-zhlee-zee-yah) الإنجليزِيَّة. Don't let the

Arabic alphabet confuse you. Just work through each word, letter by letter. Listed below are three related words built around three core letters called the root. Letters are added around the root, but the common core remains. Can you find the root in each of these words? Be sure to say

each (ka-lee-ma) كلمة aloud (wa) وَ then write out (al-r-ra-be-ya) العَرَبِيَّة in the blank to the left.

_____	دَرَسَ	to study..... (da-ra-sa) ..... دَرَسَ <input type="checkbox"/>
_____		school..... (ma-dra-sa) ..... مَدْرَسَة <input type="checkbox"/>
_____		lesson..... (dars) ..... دَرَس <input type="checkbox"/>

Additional fun (ka-lee-maat) كلمات like these will appear at the bottom of the following pages in a yellow

color band. They are easy to learn because they are related to each other—enjoy them!

Arabic does not have words for “a” or “an,” which makes things easier for you. The letters “<sup>(al)</sup>ال” in front of an Arabic word (on the right) means “the.” If you do not see “<sup>(al)</sup>ال” in front of an Arabic word, “a” or “an” is assumed. Here are some examples.

(Hahm-maam) ← حَمَام toilet		(bahnk) ← بَنْك bank		(Haa-fee-la) ← حَافِلَة bus
(al-Hahm-maam) ← الْحَمَام the toilet		(al-bahnk) ← الْبَنْك the bank		(al-Haa-fee-la) ← الْحَافِلَة the bus
(taak-see) ← تَاكْسِي taxi		(foon-dooq) ← فُنْدُق hotel		(ma-Tahm) ← مَطْعَم restaurant
(ah-taak-see) ← التَّاكْسِي the taxi		(al-foon-dooq) ← الفُنْدُق the hotel		(al-ma-Tahm) ← المَطْعَم the restaurant

Don't be surprised – “<sup>(al)</sup>ال” is pronounced both as “al” and “ah.” Just remember the core of <sup>(al-ka-lee-ma)</sup>الكلمة doesn't change, so you should always be able to recognize it. You will be understood whether you say <sup>(bahnk)</sup>بَنْك or <sup>(al-bahnk)</sup>الْبَنْك. Learn to look and listen for the core of the word, and remember to read from right to left — the blue arrows (←) are there to help you.



In Step 2 you were introduced to the Eight Key Question Words. These eight words are the basics, the most essential building blocks for learning Arabic. Throughout this book you will come across keys asking you to fill in the missing question <sup>(ka-lee-ma)</sup>كلمة. Use this opportunity not only to fill in the blank on that key, but to review all your question <sup>(ka-lee-maat)</sup>كلمات. Play with the new sounds, speak slowly <sup>(wa)</sup>وَ and have fun.

_____	teacher (مُدْرَس) ..... (moo-dar-rees).....	← مُدْرَس □
_____	teacher (مُدْرَسَة) ..... (moo-dar-ree-sa).....	مُدْرَسَة □
_____	studying ..... (dee-raa-sa).....	دِرَاسَة □

# Look Around You

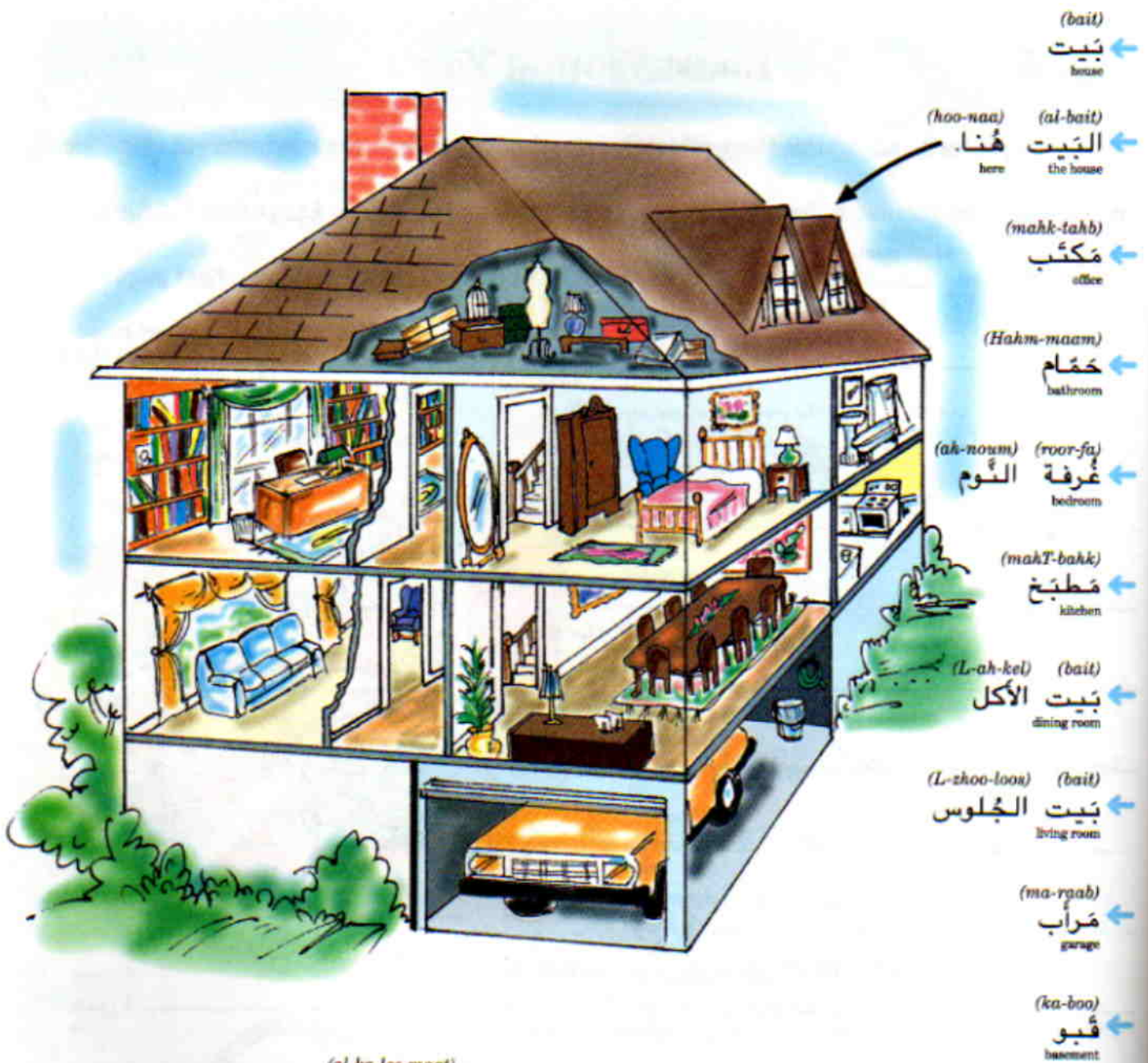
Before you proceed <sup>(mar)</sup> مع ← this Step, situate yourself comfortably in your living room. Now look around you. Can you name the things that you see in this <sup>(roor-fa)</sup> غرفة ← in <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> العربية ←? After practicing these <sup>(ka-lee-maat)</sup> كلمات ← out loud, write them in the blanks below <sup>(sea)</sup> و ← on the next page.

<sup>(miss-baaH)</sup> مصباح ← lamp  
<sup>(ka-na-ba)</sup> كنب ← sofa  
<sup>(ah-ree-ka)</sup> أريكة ← sofa  
<sup>(koor-see)</sup> كرسي ← chair  
<sup>(sahzh-zheh-da)</sup> سجادة ← carpet  
<sup>(Taa-we-la)</sup> طاولة ← table  
<sup>(baab)</sup> باب ← door  
<sup>(saa-ra)</sup> ساعة ← clock  
<sup>(see-taa-ra)</sup> ستارة ← curtain  
<sup>(haa-tif)</sup> هاتف / <sup>(teh-lee-foon)</sup> تليفون ← telephone  
<sup>(neh-fee-da)</sup> نافذة ← window  
<sup>(ssoo-ra)</sup> صورة ← picture

Now open your <sup>(kee-taab)</sup> كتاب ← to the sticky labels on page 17 and later on page 35. Peel off the first 11 labels <sup>(sea)</sup> و ← and proceed around your <sup>(roor-fa)</sup> غرفة ← labeling these items in your home. This will help to increase your <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> العربية ← word power easily. Don't forget to say <sup>(al-ka-lee-ma)</sup> الكلمة ← as you attach each label. Now ask yourself, “ <sup>(ah-ssoo-ra)</sup> أين الصورة؟ ← ” and point at it while you answer,

“ <sup>(hoo-naa)</sup> <sup>(ah-ssoo-ra)</sup> الصورة هنا. ← ” Continue on down the list above until you feel comfortable <sup>(mar)</sup> مع ← these new <sup>(al-ka-lee-maat)</sup> الكلمات ←.

- \_\_\_\_\_ to write ..... <sup>(ka-ta-ba)</sup> كُتِبَ ←
- \_\_\_\_\_ office / desk ..... <sup>(mahk-tahb)</sup> مَكْتَب
- \_\_\_\_\_ library ..... <sup>(mahk-ta-ba)</sup> مَكْتَبَة



While learning these new <sup>(al-ka-lee-maat)</sup> **الكلمات**, ← let's not forget:  
(the) words

(sy-yaa-ra) ← **سَيّارة**  
car



(neh-ree-ya) (dar-raa-zha) ← **نَرّاجة نارِيّة**  
motorcycle



(dar-raa-zha) ← **نَرّاجة**  
bicycle



**كُتِبَ**

writing ..... (kee-taa-ba) ..... ← **كِتابَة**   
 writer (♂) ..... (kaa-teeb) ..... ← **كاتب**   
 writer (♀) ..... (kaa-tee-ba) ..... ← **كاتِبَة**

(keT-Ta) ←  
قطة  
cat



(Ha-dee-qa) ←  
حديقة  
garden



(zoo-hoor) ←  
زهور  
flowers



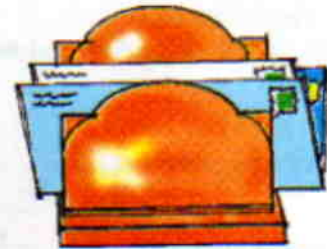
(keib) ←  
كلب  
dog



(al-ba-reed) (soon-dooq) ←  
صندوق البريد  
mailbox



(al-ba-reed) ←  
البريد  
mail



Peel off the next set of labels <sup>(tea)</sup> و <sup>(bait)</sup> wander through your <sup>(al-ka-lee-maat)</sup> بيت ← learning these new <sup>(al-ka-lee-maat)</sup> الكلمات ←  
and house (the) words

It will be somewhat difficult to label your <sup>(keib)</sup> كلب, <sup>(keT-Ta)</sup> قطة ← or <sup>(zoo-hoor)</sup> زهور ← but be creative.  
dog cat flowers

Practice by asking yourself, “<sup>(al-Ha-dee-qa)</sup> أين الحديقة؟” ← and reply, “<sup>(hoo-naa)</sup> الحديقة هنا.” ←  
the garden where here (is) the garden

“<sup>(al-Ha-dee-qa)</sup> أين الحديقة؟” ← “<sup>(al-bait)</sup> أين البيت؟” ←  
the garden where the house where



\_\_\_\_\_ to translate ..... (tar-zha-ma) ..... ←  تَرْجَمُ

\_\_\_\_\_ translator (ك) ..... (moo-tar-zheem) ..... ←  مُتَرْجِم

\_\_\_\_\_ translation ..... (tar-zha-ma) ..... ←  تَرْجَمَة

← واحد - اثنین - ثلاثة

three

two

one



Consider for a minute how important numbers are. How could you tell someone your phone

number, your address <sup>(ow)</sup> أو ← your hotel <sup>(roor-fa)</sup> غرفة ← if you had no <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> الأرقام ←? And think of how

difficult it would be if you could not understand the time, the price of an apple <sup>(ow)</sup> أو ← the correct

bus to take. These numbers may look different, <sup>(la-kin)</sup> لكن ← they are still written from left to right.

Notice the similarities between <sup>(ar-ba-ah)</sup> أربعة (٤) ← and <sup>(ah-shar) (ar-ba-ah)</sup> أربعة عشر (١٤) ←, <sup>(seet-teh)</sup> ستة (٦) ← and

<sup>(ah-shar) (seet-teh)</sup> ستة عشر (١٦) ← and so on.

(١٠/10)	<sup>(ah-sha-ra)</sup> عشرة ← ١٠	(. / 0)	<sup>(sif-fur)</sup> صفر ← ٠
(١١/11)	<sup>(ah-shar) (ah-Hahd)</sup> أحد عشر ← ١١	(١ / 1)	<sup>(waa-Hahd)</sup> واحد ← ١
(١٢/12)	<sup>(ah-shar) (ith-naa)</sup> اثنا عشر ← ١٢	(٢ / 2)	<sup>(ith-nayn)</sup> اثنین ← ٢
(١٣/13)	<sup>(ah-shar) (tha-laa-tha)</sup> ثلاثة عشر ← ١٣	(٣ / 3)	<sup>(tha-laa-tha)</sup> ثلاثة ← ٣
(١٤/14)	<sup>(ah-shar) (ar-ba-ah)</sup> أربعة عشر ← ١٤	(٤ / 4)	<sup>(ar-ba-ah)</sup> أربعة ← ٤
(١٥/15)	<sup>(ah-shar) (hahm-sa)</sup> خمسة عشر ← ١٥	(٥ / 5)	<sup>(hahm-sa)</sup> خمسة ← ٥
(١٦/16)	<sup>(ah-shar) (seet-teh)</sup> ستة عشر ← ١٦	(٦ / 6)	<sup>(seet-teh)</sup> ستة ← ٦
(١٧/17)	<sup>(ah-shar) (sahb'ah)</sup> سبعة عشر ← ١٧	(٧ / 7)	<sup>(sahb'ah)</sup> سبعة ← ٧
(١٨/18)	<sup>(ah-shar) (tha-maa-nee-ya)</sup> ثمانية عشر ← ١٨	(٨ / 8)	<sup>(tha-maa-nee-ya)</sup> ثمانية ← ٨
(١٩/19)	<sup>(ah-shar) (tis'ah)</sup> تسعة عشر ← ١٩	(٩ / 9)	<sup>(tis'ah)</sup> تسعة ← ٩
(٢٠/20)	<sup>(aysh-reen) (aysh-roon)</sup> عشرون / عشرين ← ٢٠	(١٠ / 10)	<sup>(ah-sha-ra)</sup> عشرة ← ١٠

شَفَى

to cure ..... (sheh-fa) ..... شَفَى










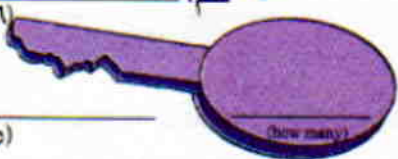

hospital ..... (moos-tesh-fa) ..... مُسْتَشْفَى

cure ..... (she-feh') ..... شَفَاء

Use <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> الأرقام <sup>(heh-da-he)</sup> هَذِهِ ← on a daily basis. Count to yourself <sup>(bil-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ ← when you brush your teeth, exercise <sup>(aw)</sup> أَوْ ← commute to work. Fill in the blanks below according to <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> الأرقام ← given in parentheses. Now is also a good time to learn <sup>(heh-da-he)</sup> هَذِهِ ← two very important phrases.

\_\_\_\_\_ . . . مِنْ فَضْلِكَ . . . أريدُ ←  
(fahD-lahk) (min) (oo-ree-do)  
(please) I want

\_\_\_\_\_ . . . مِنْ فَضْلِكَ . . . نريدُ ←  
(fahD-lahk) (min) (noo-ree-do)  
(please) we want

(c) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ← how many		(c) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(c) <sup>(oo-ree-do)</sup> أريدُ ← I want
(9) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ← how many		(9) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(9) <sup>(oo-ree-do)</sup> أريدُ ← I want
(2) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ← how many		(2) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(2) <sup>(oo-ree-do)</sup> أريدُ ← I want
(4) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ← how many		(4) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(4) <sup>(oo-ree-do)</sup> أريدُ ← I want
(7) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ←		(7) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(7) <sup>(oo-ree-do)</sup> أريدُ ←
(10) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ←		(10) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(10) <sup>(noo-ree-do)</sup> نريدُ ← we want
(1) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ←		(1) <sup>(min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ←	(1) <sup>(noo-ree-do)</sup> نريدُ ← we want
(8) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ←		(8) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(8) <sup>(noo-ree-do)</sup> نريدُ ← we want
(3) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ←		(3) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(3) <sup>(noo-ree-do)</sup> نريدُ ← we want
(6) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ←		(6) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(6) <sup>(noo-ree-do)</sup> نريدُ ← we want
(5) <sup>(kem)</sup> كم؟ ←		(5) <sup>(fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. ← please	(5) <sup>(noo-ree-do)</sup> نريدُ ← we want

\_\_\_\_\_ طَبِّ ← to remedy . . . . . (Tahb-ba) . . . . .  
 \_\_\_\_\_ طَبِّ ← medicine . . . . . (Tehb) . . . . .  
 \_\_\_\_\_ طَبِّ ← medical . . . . . (Tehb-be) . . . . .

Now see if you can translate the following thoughts <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya) (ee-la)</sup> إلى العَرَبِيَّة <sup>(al-eeh-we-ba)</sup> الأَجْوِبَةُ ← are provided at the bottom of <sup>(ah-ssahf-Ha)</sup> الصَّفحة ← the page



1. I want seven please.

---

2. I want four please.

---



3. We want eight please.

---



4. We want three please.

---

Review <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> الأرقام ← 1 through 20. Write out your telephone number, fax number, and cellular number. Then write out a friend's telephone number and then a relative's telephone number.

Remember, in Arabic, numbers are written as in English from left to right.



( ٢ . ٦ ) ٢ ٨ ٤ - ٤ ٢ ١ ١

---



( - - ) - - - - -

---



( - - ) - - - - -

---

الأجوبة  
the answers

3. نُرِيدُ ثَمَانِيَةَ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.

4. نُرِيدُ ثَلَاثَةَ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.

1. أُرِيدُ سَبْعَةَ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.

2. أُرِيدُ أَرْبَعَةَ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.



(ahl-ween) الألوان  
the colors

(ahl-ween) ← الألوان ← are the same in Jordan (ahl-ween) ← الألوان ← the colors  
 (al-ahs-maa') ← الأسماء ← the names  
 (oat) ← أو ← Kuwait as they are in (ahm-ree-kaa) ← أمريكا ← America — they just have  
 different

(zoh-ree) ← زَهْرِي ← pink

(ah-mar) ← أَحْمَر ← red

(boor-too-gaa-lee) ← بُرْتُقَالِي ← orange

(ah-be-yahD) ← أَيْض ← white

(ahz-rahq) ← أَزَق ← blue

(reh-maa-dee) ← زَمَادِي ← grey

(ahss-far) ← أَصْفَر ← yellow

(boon-nee) ← بُنِّي ← brown

(ahk-Dar) ← أَخْضَر ← green

(ahs-weed) ← أَسْوَد ← black

(moo-la-ween) ← مُلَوَّن ← colorful

Peel off the next group of labels (wa) ← وَ proceed to label (ahl-ween) ← الألوان ← the colors in your (bait) ← بَيْت ← home

- \_\_\_\_\_ ← طبيب (Ta-beeb) ..... doctor (♂)
- \_\_\_\_\_ ← طبيبة (Ta-bee-ba) ..... doctor (♀)
- \_\_\_\_\_ ← تطبيب (tahT-beeb) ..... medical practice

Identify the two or three dominant colors in the flags below.



Egypt



Morocco



Tunisia



Jordan



Saudi Arabia



Lebanon



Bahrain



Palestinian State

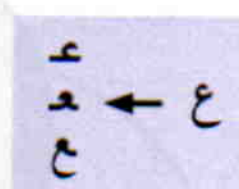
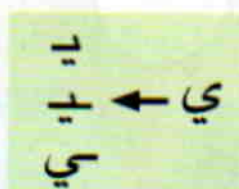
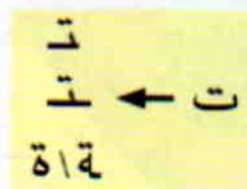
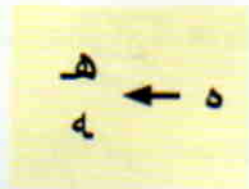


Kuwait



Syria

Keep an eye on these four <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> letters: **ه ت ي ع** Notice how they change at the end of a word as well as internally and at the beginning.



(*heh-daa*)  
هَذَا  
this (♂)

(*taak-see*)  
تاكسي  
taxi

(*eye-na*)  
أَيْنَ  
where

(*ah-mya-loo*)  
أَعْمَلُ  
I work

(*heh-da-he*)  
هَذِهِ  
this (♀)

(*meh-ta*)  
مَتَى  
when

(*meh-dee-na*)  
مَدِينَةٌ  
city

(*al-r-ra-be-ya*)  
الْعَرَبِيَّةُ  
Arabic

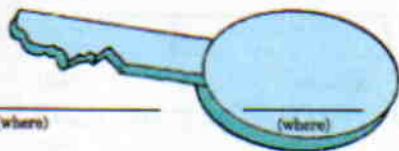
(*la-hoo*)  
لَهُ  
he has

(*sy-yaa-ra*) (ka-lee-ma)  
كَلِمَةٌ | سَيَّارَةٌ  
word | car

(*lee*)  
لِي  
I have

(*mar*)  
مَعَ  
with

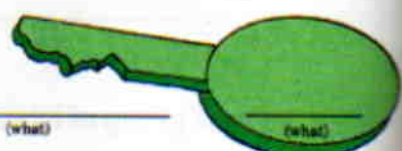
(*al-bahnk*)  
الْبَنْكُ؟  
the bank



(where)

(where)

(*heh-daa*)  
هَذَا؟  
this



(what)

(what)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

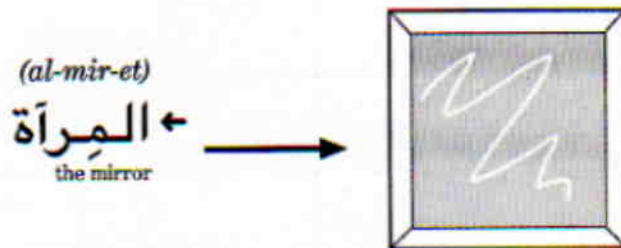
لَوْنٌ

- ← لَوْنٌ to color..... (*lao-weh-na*)
- لَوْن color..... (*lawn*)
- مَلَوْنَاتُ crayons..... (*moo-lao-weh-net*)

(mias-baaH)	(sy-ya-a-ra)	(boon-nee)	(ra-aseer)
مِصْبَاح	سَيَّارَة	بُنْي	عَصِير
(ah-ree-ka)	(neh-ree-ya) (dar-raa-zha)	(aH-mar)	(Ha-loeb)
أْرِيكَة	دَرَّاجَة نَارِيَّة	أَحْمَر	حَلِيب
(koor-see)	(dar-raa-zha)	(zeh-ree)	(zoob-da)
كُرْسِي	دَرَّاجَة	زَهْرِي	زُبْدَة
(sakh-zhek-da)	(keT-Ta)	(boor-too-qaa-lee)	(melH)
سَجَّادَة	قِطَّة	بُرْتُقَالِي	مِلْح
(Taa-see-la)	(Ha-dee-qa)	(ah-be-yahD)	(ahs-wed) (fool-fool)
طَاوِلَة	حَدِيْقَة	أَبْيَض	فُلْفُل أَسْوَد
(baab)	(zoo-hoor)	(ahas-far)	(kess)
بَاب	زُهْر	أَصْفَر	كَّاس
(saa-ra)	(kelb)	(reh-maa-dee)	(zha-ree-da)
سَاعَة	كَلْب	رَمَادِي	جَرِيدَة
(see-taa-ra)	(al-ba-reed) (ssoon-dooq)	(ahs-wed)	(feen-zhaan)
سِتَّارَة	صُنْدُوق البَرِيد	أَسْوَد	فِنْجَان
(sh-lee-foon)	(al-ba-reed)	(ahz-rahq)	(min-deel)
تَلِيفُون	البَرِيد	أَزْرَق	مِنْدِيل
(neh-fee-da)	(sif-fur)	(ahk-Dar)	(shoo-ka)
نَافِذَة	صِيفْر	أَخْضَر	شُوكَة
(ssoo-ra)	(waa-Hahd)	(moo-la-wen)	(Ta-bahq)
صُورَة	وَاجِد	مُلَوَّن	طَبَق
(bait)	(ith-nayn)	(al-hair) (saa-baaH)	(nik-keen)
بَيْت	إِثْنَيْن	صَبَاح الخَيْر	سِگِّين
(mahk-tahb)	(tha-laa-tha)	(al-hair) (ma-saa')	(mil'a-qa)
مَكْتَب	ثَلَاثَة	مَسَاء الخَيْر	مِلْعَقَة
(Shah-maam)	(ar-ba-ah)	(hair) (ah-la) (tooss-beh-Hoo-na)	(hee-zaa-na)
حَمَام	أَرْبَعَة	تُصْبِحُون عَلَى خَيْر	خِرَانَة
(sh-noon) (roor-fa)	(hahm-sa)	(mar-Ha-baa)	(shay)
عُرْفَة الثَّوْم	حَمْسَة	مَرْحَبَا	شَاي
(mahT-bahk)	(seet-teh)	(Haa-Jahk) (kay-fa)	(qah-wa)
مَطْبَخ	سِتَّة	كَيْفَ حَالِك؟	قَهْوَة
(sh-ah-kei) (bait)	(sahb'ah)	(Hag-lik) (kay-fa)	(hoobz)
بَيْت الأَكْل	سَبْعَة	كَيْفَ حَالِك؟	خُبْز
(sh-ah-noon) (bait)	(tha-maa-nee-ya)	(tha-laa-zha)	(fahD-lahk) (min)
بَيْت الجُلُوس	ثَمَانِيَة	ثَلَاجَة	مِن فَضْلِك
(ma-rzab)	(tis'ah)	(foorn)	(fahD-lik) (min)
مَرَّاب	تِسْعَة	فُرْن	مِن فَضْلِك
(ka-boo)	(ah-sha-ra)	(maa')	(shook-rahn)
قَبُو	عَشْرَة	مَاء	شُكْرًا

# STICKY LABELS

This book has over 150 special sticky labels for you to use as you learn new words. When you are introduced to one of these words, remove the corresponding label from these pages. Be sure to use each of these unique self-adhesive labels by adhering them to a picture, window, lamp, or whatever object they refer to. And yes, they are removable! The sticky labels make learning to speak Arabic much more fun and a lot easier than you ever expected. For example, when you look in the mirror and see the label, say



Don't just say it once, say it again and again. And once you label the refrigerator, you should never again open that door without saying



By using the sticky labels, you not only learn new words, but friends and family learn along with you! The sooner you start the sooner you can use these labels at home or work.

Before starting this Step, go back <sup>(wa)</sup> و review Step 5/5. It is important that you can count to

<sup>(al-kee-taab)</sup> without looking at **الكتاب** <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> Let's learn the larger **الأرقام** <sup>(heh-da-he)</sup> now. After

<sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> practicing aloud **الغريبة** <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> numbers \. through \... below, write **الأرقام** <sup>(heh-da-he)</sup> **هذه** in

the blanks provided. Again, notice the similarities between **الأرقام** <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> such as **أربعة** <sup>(ar-ba-ah)</sup> (٤) <sup>(ar-ba-oon)</sup> and **أربعون** <sup>(ar-ba-oon)</sup> (٤٠).

<sup>(ak-shar)(ar-ba-ah)</sup> **أربعة عشر** <sup>(ar-ba-oon)</sup> (١٤) and **أربعون** <sup>(ar-ba-oon)</sup> (٤٠).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| _____ ١. / 10                          | _____ <b>عَشْرَة</b> <sup>(ah-sha-ra)</sup> ١.                         |
| _____ ٢. / 20                          | _____ <b>عِشْرُون / عِشْرِين</b> <sup>(aysh-reen) (aysh-roon)</sup> ٢. |
| _____ ٣. / 30                          | _____ <b>ثَلَاثُون</b> <sup>(tha-laa-thoon)</sup> ٣.                   |
| _____ ٤. / 40                          | _____ <b>أَرْبَعُون</b> <sup>(ar-ba-oon)</sup> ٤.                      |
| _____ ٥. / 50                          | _____ <b>خَمْسُون</b> <sup>(hahm-soon)</sup> ٥.                        |
| _____ ٦. / 60                          | _____ <b>سِتُّون سِتُّون سِتُّون سِتُّون</b> <sup>(seet-toon)</sup> ٦. |
| _____ ٧. / 70                          | _____ <b>سَبْعُون</b> <sup>(sahb'oon)</sup> ٧.                         |
| _____ ٨. / 80                          | _____ <b>ثَمَانُون</b> <sup>(tha-maa-noon)</sup> ٨.                    |
| _____ <b>٩. ٩. ٩. ٩. ٩. ٩.</b> ٩. / 90 | _____ <b>تِسْعُون</b> <sup>(tis'oon)</sup> ٩.                          |
| _____ ١٠. / 100                        | _____ <b>مِئَة</b> <sup>(me-ya)</sup> ١٠.                              |
| _____ ٥٠. / 500                        | _____ <b>خَمْسُمِئَة</b> <sup>(hahm-soo-me-ya)</sup> ٥٠.               |
| _____ ١٠٠٠. / 1,000                    | _____ <b>أَلْف</b> <sup>(alf)</sup> ١٠٠٠.                              |

Here are two important phrases to go <sup>(mar)</sup> **مَعَ** <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> all **الأرقام** <sup>(heh-da-he)</sup> **هذه** <sup>(heh-da-he)</sup> Say them out loud over

<sup>(wa)</sup> و over <sup>(wa)</sup> و then write them out twice as many times!

\_\_\_\_\_ **عِنْدِي** <sup>(rin-dee)</sup> ←  
I have  
\_\_\_\_\_ **عِنْدَنَا** <sup>(rin-da-naa)</sup> ←  
we have

\_\_\_\_\_ **نَظَرَ** <sup>(na-Tha-ra)</sup> ←  to view  
\_\_\_\_\_ **نَظَر** <sup>(na-Thar)</sup> ←  visionary  
\_\_\_\_\_ **مِنْظَار** <sup>(min-Thaar)</sup> ←  binoculars / microscope

Depending upon whether your travels take you to <sup>(al-ma-greb)</sup> المَغْرِبِ ← or <sup>(meess-ur)</sup> مِصْر ← or <sup>(al-oor-doon)</sup> الأُرْدُن ← you will encounter a variety of currencies. Let's learn the various kinds of <sup>(nahq-dee-ya)</sup> قِطْعِ نَقْدِيَّةِ ← and <sup>(foo-loos)</sup> فُلُوسِ ←. Always be sure to practice each <sup>(ka-lee-ma)</sup> كَلِمَةً ← out loud. You might want to exchange some money <sup>(al-ann)</sup> الآن ← so that you can familiarize yourself <sup>(mar)</sup> مَعَ ← the various <sup>(foo-loos)</sup> فُلُوسِ ← <sup>(wa)</sup> وَ ← <sup>(nahq-dee-ya)</sup> قِطْعِ نَقْدِيَّةِ ← <sup>(qeh-Tar)</sup> وَ فُلُوسِ ←.

<sup>(al-oor-doon)</sup> في الأُرْدُن ←  
Jordan



<sup>(meess-ur)</sup> في مِصْر ←  
Egypt



<sup>(al-ma-greb)</sup> في المَغْرِبِ ←  
Morocco



نَظَرَ

eyeglasses ..... (naTh-Thaa-ra) ..... نَظَّارَةٌ  
view ..... (man-Thar) ..... مَنظَرٌ  
theory ..... (na-Tha-ree-ya) ..... نَظَرِيَّةٌ

Review <sup>(ah-sha-ra)</sup> <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> عَشْرَةَ الأرقام through <sup>(alf)</sup> ألف again. <sup>(kay-fa)</sup> كيف do you say "twenty-two" <sup>(ow)</sup> أو

"fifty-three" <sup>(bil-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> بالعربية? You basically talk backwards - "two and twenty" (اثنان و عِشرون)

<sup>(ow)</sup> أو "three and fifty" (ثلاثة و خمسون). See if you can say <sup>(wa)</sup> و write out <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> الأرقام on

this <sup>(sahf-Ha)</sup> صفحة. <sup>(al-azh-see-ha)</sup> الأجوبة are at the bottom of <sup>(ah-sahf-Ha)</sup> الصفحة.

\_\_\_\_\_ ٢ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ ١ (1)  
(25 = 5 and 20) (47 = 7 and 40)

\_\_\_\_\_ ٤ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ ٣ (3)  
(84 = 4 and 80) (51 = 1 and 50)

Now, how would you say the following <sup>(bil-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> بالعربية?

\_\_\_\_\_ ٥ (5)  
(I have 90 dinars.)

\_\_\_\_\_ ٦ (6)  
(I have 60 dinars.)

To ask how much something costs <sup>(bil-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> بالعربية, one simply asks <sup>(be-kem)</sup> بكم?

Now you try it. \_\_\_\_\_ Again. \_\_\_\_\_  
(How much?) (How much?)

Answer the following questions based on the numbers in parentheses.

<sup>(shah-raa-him)</sup> دراهم <sup>(be)</sup> بعشرة <sup>(be-kem)</sup> بكم? ٧ (7)  
dirhams (١٠ / 10) R (costs) how much

<sup>(shah-raa-him)</sup> دراهم <sup>(be)</sup> بـ <sup>(be-kem)</sup> بكم? ٨ (8)  
dirhams (٨ / 8) R (costs) how much

<sup>(shah-raa-him)</sup> دراهم <sup>(be)</sup> بـ <sup>(be-kem)</sup> بكم? ٩ (9)  
dirhams (٩ / 9) R (costs) how much

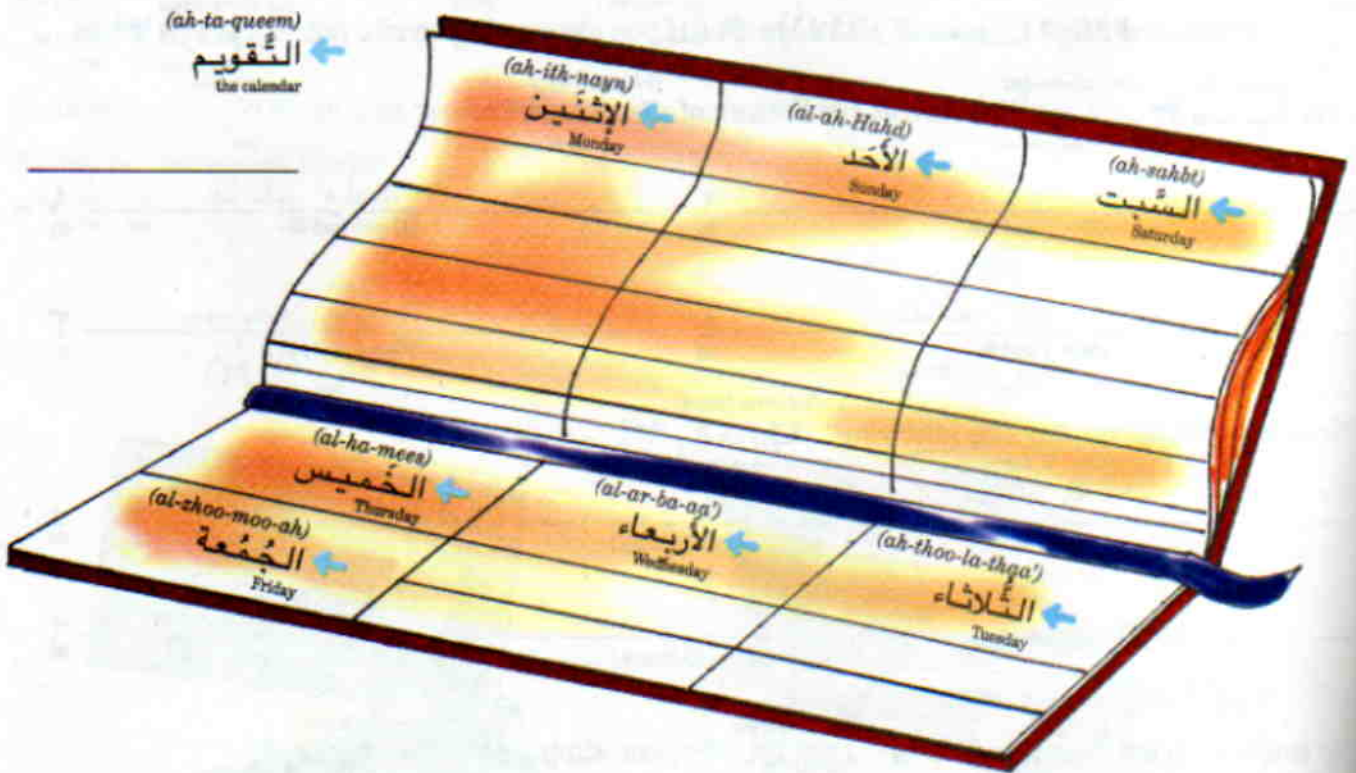
<sup>(shah-raa-him)</sup> دراهم <sup>(be)</sup> بـ <sup>(be-kem)</sup> بكم? ١٠ (10)  
dirhams (٥ / 5) R (costs) how much



الأجوبة

١ ← سبعة و أربعون	٥ ← عندي تسعون ديناراً.	٨ ← ثمانية
٢ ← خمسة و عشرون	٦ ← عندي ستون ديناراً.	٩ ← تسعة
٣ ← واحد و خمسون	٧ ← عشرة	١٠ ← خمسة
٤ ← أربعة و ثمانون		

أَمْس - الْيَوْم - غَدًا  
yesterday today tomorrow



Learn the days of the week by writing them in **التقويم** (ah-ta-queem) above and then move on to the

parts to each **يوم** (yohm) (ar-ba-ah) **أربعة** (four)



(ah-lqil) **الليل** (the night)



(al-ma-saa') **المساء** (the evening)



(ah-Doo-hur) (ba-da) **بعد الظهر** (the afternoon)



(ah-ssa-baaH) **الصباح** (the morning)

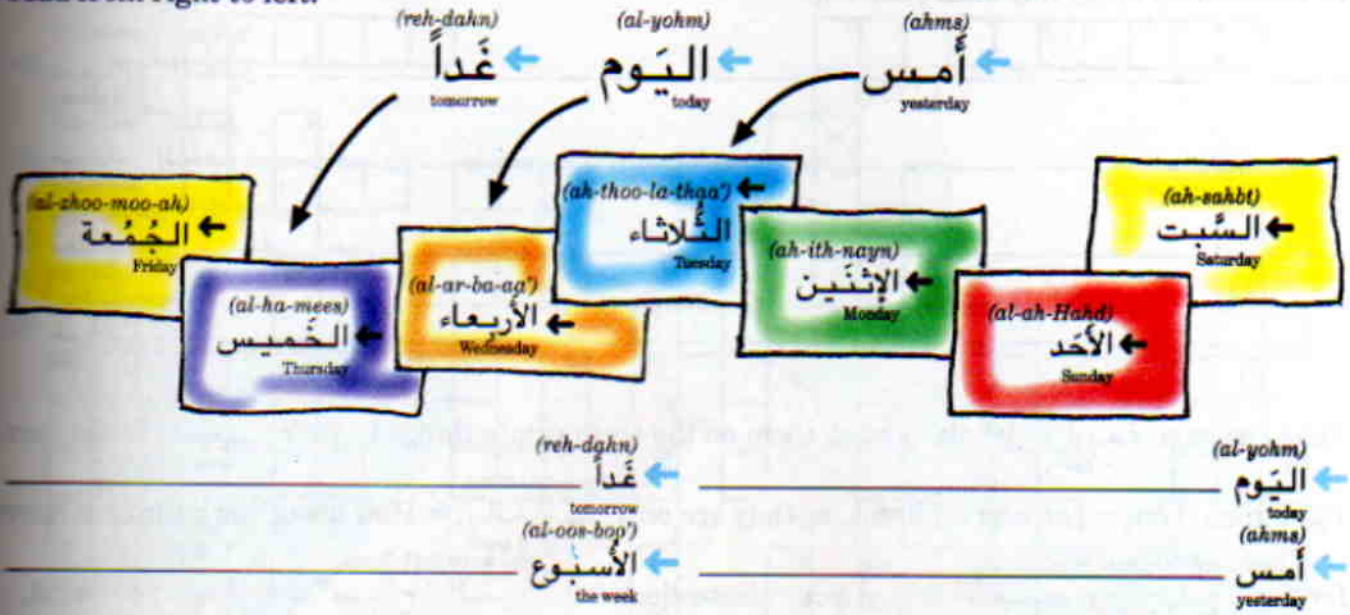
طائر

to fly ..... (Taa-ra) ..... طائر  
airplane ..... (Taa-ee-ra) ..... طائرة  
pilot ..... (Ty-yaar) ..... طيار



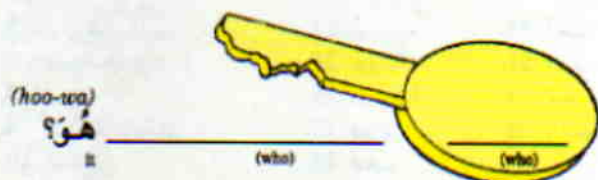
It is very <sup>(moo-him)</sup> مهم ← to know the days of the week <sup>(wa)</sup> وَ the various parts of <sup>(al-yohm)</sup> اليَوْم ← Remember, <sub>the day</sub> important

read from right to left.



To say "in the morning," you simply say "في الصباح" <sup>(ah-ssa-baaH)</sup> (fee) ← or "صباحاً." <sup>(ssa-baa-Hahn)</sup> ← The same applies to "in the evening:" "في المساء" <sup>(al-ma-saa')</sup> (fee) ← or "مساءً." <sup>(ma-saa-ahn)</sup> ← Fill in the following blanks <sup>(ah-ssahf-Ha)</sup> الصفحة ← then check your answers at the bottom of <sub>the page</sub>

- \_\_\_\_\_ = Sunday a.
- \_\_\_\_\_ = in the evening b.
- \_\_\_\_\_ = Thursday afternoon c.
- \_\_\_\_\_ = tomorrow morning d.
- \_\_\_\_\_ = tomorrow afternoon e.
- \_\_\_\_\_ = tomorrow evening f.



- الأجوبة
- a. ← الأحد
- b. في المساء
- c. الخميس بعد الظهر
- d. غداً صباحاً (في الصباح)
- e. غداً بعد الظهر
- f. غداً مساءً (في المساء)

Knowing the parts of <sup>(al-yohm)</sup> **اليوم** ← will help you to learn the various <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> **العَرَبِيَّة** ← greetings below.  
the day Arabic

Practice these every day until your trip.

<sup>(al-hair)</sup> <sup>(ssa-baaH)</sup>  
**صَبَاحَ الْخَيْرِ** ←  
good morning

<sup>(al-hair)</sup> <sup>(ma-saa')</sup>  
**مَسَاءَ الْخَيْرِ** ←  
good evening

<sup>(hair)</sup> <sup>(ah-la)</sup> <sup>(tooss-beh-Hoo-na)</sup>  
**تُصَبِّحُونَ عَلَى خَيْرٍ** ←  
good night

<sup>(mar-Ha-baa)</sup>  
**مَرْحَبًا** ←  
hello

Take the next <sup>(ar-ba-ah)</sup> **أربعة** ← labels و stick them on the appropriate things in your <sup>(bait)</sup> **بَيْتٍ** ←. Make sure  
four house

you attach them to the correct items, as they are only <sup>(bil-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> **بالعَرَبِيَّة** ←. How about the bathroom mirror  
in Arabic

for <sup>(hair)</sup> <sup>(ah-la)</sup> <sup>(tooss-beh-Hoo-na)</sup> **“تُصَبِّحُونَ عَلَى خَيْرٍ”** ←? <sup>(ow)</sup> **أو** ←? Let's not forget, <sup>(al-hair)</sup> <sup>(sah-baaH)</sup> **“صَبَاحَ الْخَيْرِ”** ←?  
good night or good morning

<sup>(Haa-lahk)</sup> <sup>(kay-fa)</sup>  
**كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟** ←  
(!) how are you

<sup>(Haa-lik)</sup> <sup>(kay-fa)</sup>  
**كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟** ←  
(!) how are you

Now for some <sup>(na-ahm)</sup> **“نَعَمْ”** or <sup>(la)</sup> **“لَا”** questions -  
yes no

Is your house <sup>(ahz-rahq)</sup> **أَزْرَقَ** ←? \_\_\_\_\_  
blue

Is your desk <sup>(ahs-lood)</sup> **أَسْوَدَ** ←? \_\_\_\_\_  
black

Is your favorite color <sup>(ahss-far)</sup> **أَصْفَرَ** ←? \_\_\_\_\_

Is today <sup>(ah-ith-nayn)</sup> **الإثْنَيْنِ** ←? \_\_\_\_\_

Do you own a <sup>(dar-raa-zha)</sup> **دَرَّاجَةَ** ←? \_\_\_\_\_  
bicycle

Do you like <sup>(ah-zoo-hoor)</sup> **الرَّهْوَرِ** ←? \_\_\_\_\_  
the flowers

You are about one-fourth of your way through this book و it is good time to review <sup>(al-ka-lee-maat)</sup> **الكلمات** ←  
the words

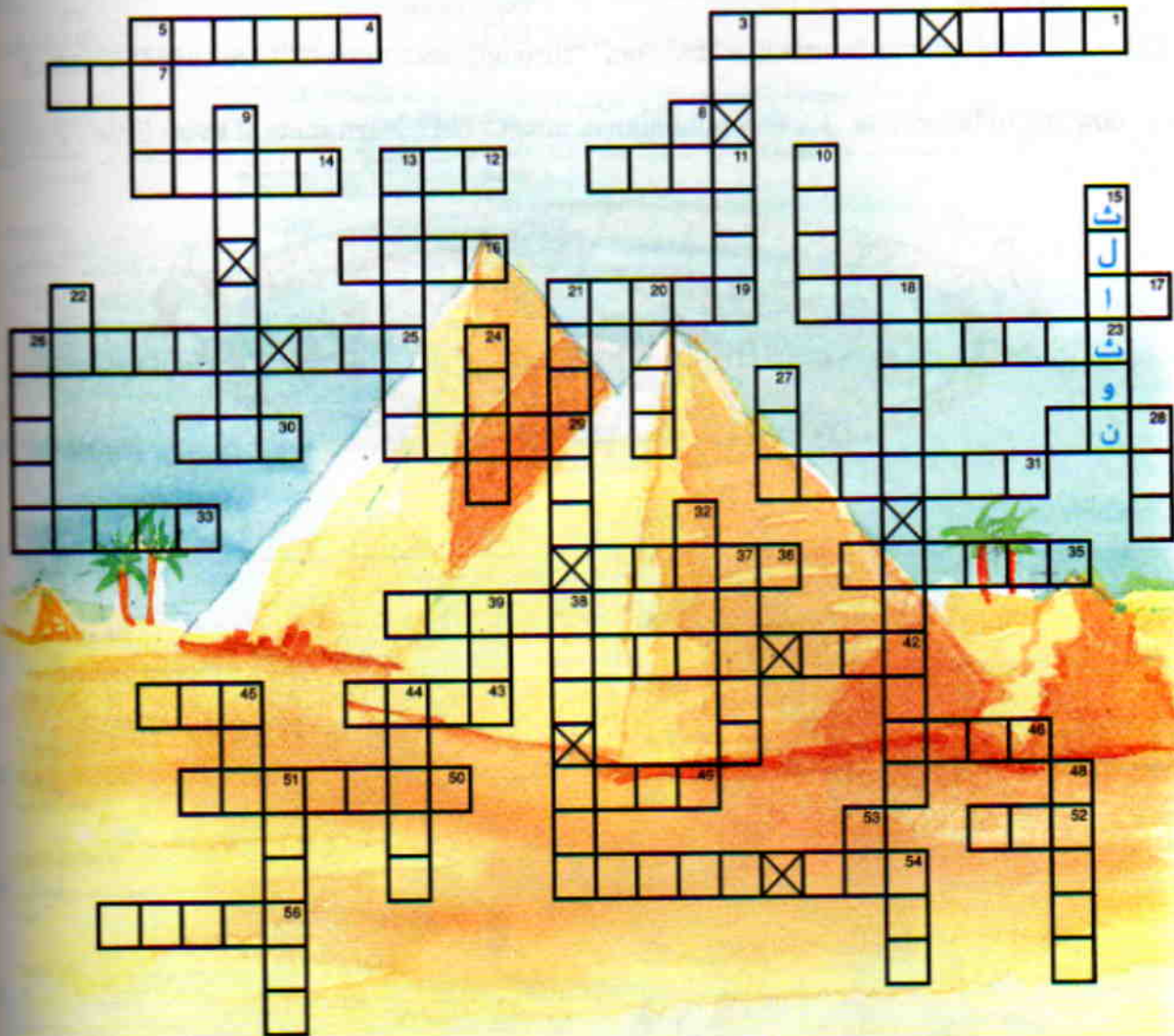
you have learned <sup>(qahb-ia)</sup> **قَبْلَ** ← doing the crossword puzzle on the next <sup>(ssahf-Ha)</sup> **صَفْحَةَ** ←.  
before page

### الأجوبة TO THE CROSSWORD PUZZLE

#### DOWN

#### ACROSS

- |            |                   |                    |               |                |               |
|------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 48. لماذا  | 22. أو            | 3. من فضلك         | 42. بيت الأكل | 23. ثمانون     | 1. غرفة النوم |
| 51. الحمام | 24. غرفة          | 5. خمسة            | 43. سبعة      | 25. بيت الجلوس | 4. الصباح     |
| 53. مع     | 26. سيارة         | 8. من              | 45. قبر       | 28. بني        | 7. مئة        |
| 54. بنك    | 27. يوم           | 9. كيف حالك        | 46. عندي      | 29. حافلة      | 11. فندق      |
|            | 28. باب           | 10. أخضر           | 49. مطبخ      | 30. بكم        | 12. هنا       |
|            | 32. في            | 13. العربية        | 50. برتقالي   | 31. التقويم    | 14. أريكة     |
|            | 37. دراجة         | 15. ثلاثون         | 52. متى       | 33. سجادة      | 16. ساعة      |
|            | 39. درس           | 18. صندوق البريد   | 54. بعد الظهر | 35. الكتاب     | 17. ما        |
|            | 44. عشرون / عشرين | 20. مطعم           | 56. مدرسة     | 36. حديقة      | 18. صفر       |
|            | 45. قبل           | 21. تصبحون على خير |               | 38. عندينا     | 19. كلمات     |



ACROSS

- 1. bedroom
- 4. the morning
- 7. one hundred
- 11. hotel
- 12. here is
- 14. sofa
- 16. clock
- 17. what
- 18. zero
- 19. words
- 23. eighty
- 25. living room
- 28. brown
- 29. bus
- 30. how much

- 31. the calendar
- 33. carpet
- 35. the book
- 36. garden
- 38. we have
- 42. dining room
- 43. seven
- 45. basement
- 46. I have
- 49. kitchen
- 50. orange (color)
- 52. when
- 54. afternoon
- 56. school

DOWN

- 3. please
- 5. five
- 8. who
- 9. how are you (؟)
- 10. green
- 13. Arabic
- 15. thirty
- 18. mailbox
- 20. restaurant
- 21. good night
- 22. or
- 24. room
- 26. car
- 27. day
- 28. door

- 32. in
- 37. bicycle
- 39. to study / he studied
- 44. twenty
- 45. before
- 48. why
- 51. the toilet
- 53. with
- 54. bank

Tip: When you do your crossword puzzles, you do not need to use any of the vowels.

... فِي - أَمَامَ - بِجَانِبِ ...

(be-zhaa-nee-be) (ah-maa-ma) (fee)

next to in front of in

(al-r-ra-be-ya)

العَرَبِيَّةُ  
Arabic

prepositions (words like "in," "on," "through" and "next to") are easy to learn و

they allow you to be precise

(mar)  
مَعَ  
with

a minimum of effort. Let's learn some of these little

(ka-lee-maat)

كَلِمَاتٍ  
words



(min)

مِنْ  
from

(ee-la)

إِلَى  
to

(hahl-fa) (wa-raa-ah)

خَلْفَ / وَرَاءَ  
behind

(ah-maa-ma)

أَمَامَ  
in front of

تَحْتَ تَحْتَ تَحْتَ

(taH-ta)  
تَحْتَ  
under

(fao-qa)

فَوْقَ  
over / above

(haa-ree-zha)

خَارِجَ  
out of

(daak-ke-la)

دَاخِلَ  
into

(be-zhaa-nee-be)

بِجَانِبِ  
next to

(by-na)

بَيْنَ  
between

(ahs-fahl)

أَسْفَلَ  
below

(ah-la)

عَلَى  
on

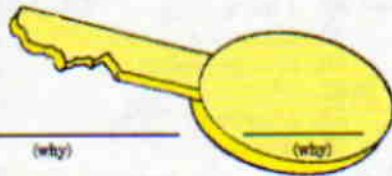
(fee)

فِي  
in

(mar)

مَعَ  
with

Fill in the blanks on the next <sup>(saahf-Ha)</sup> صَفْحَةٌ page with the correct prepositions according to those you just learned.



(la)

لَا  
not

(why)

(why)

عَطَّلَ

to interrupt / defer ..... (rahT-Ta-la) ..... عَطَّلَ

unemployed (♠) ..... (raa-Til) ..... عَاطِلٌ

unemployed (♠) ..... (raa-Teh-la) ..... عَاطِلَةٌ

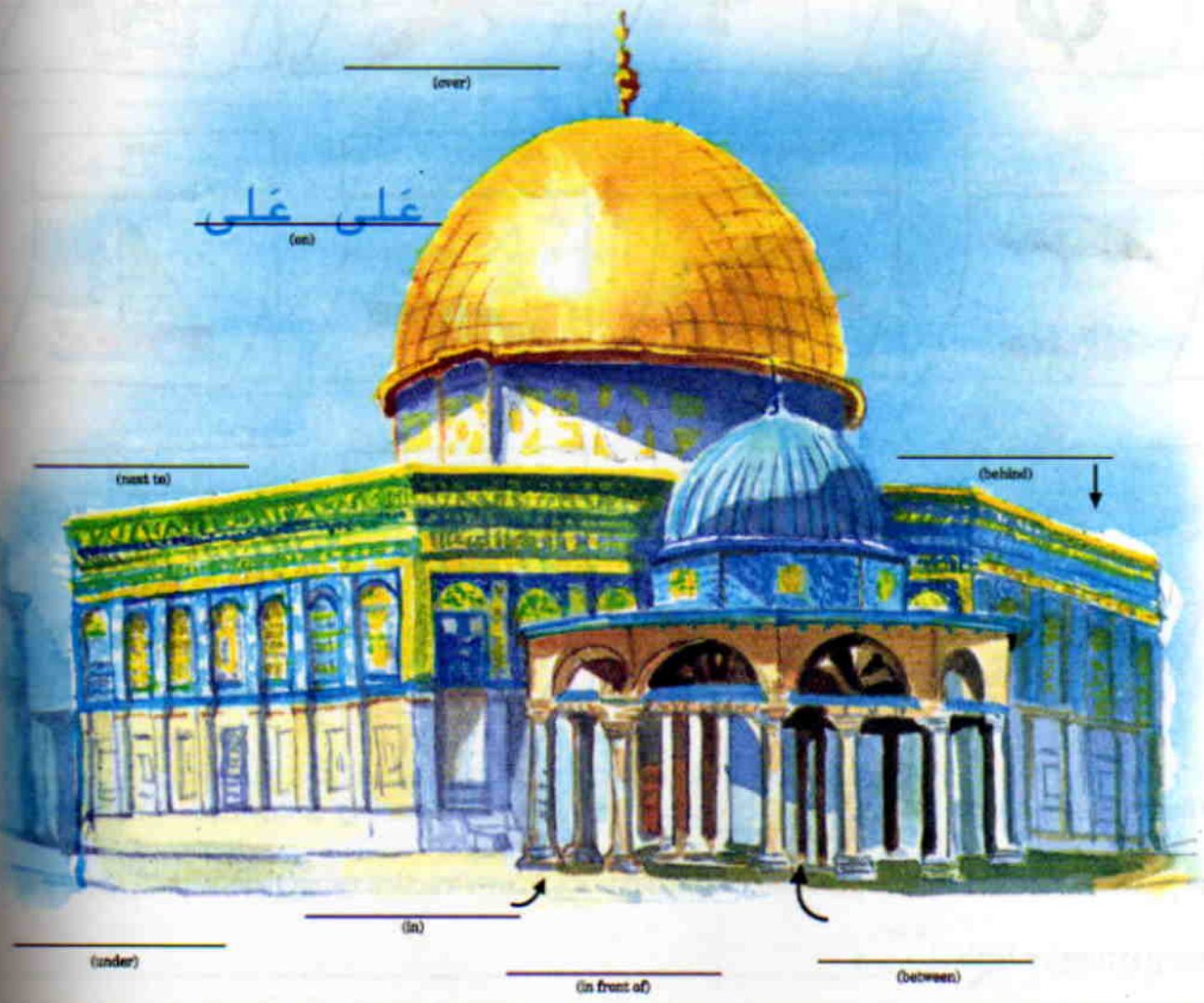
(ah-Taa-we-la) الطَّوَالِةُ the table (on) (al-kess) الكَأْسُ the glass (ah-Taa-we-la) الطَّوَالِةُ the table (under) (al-keT-Ta) القِطَّةُ the cat (is)

(al-foom-dooq) الفُنْدُقُ the hotel (in) (ah-dook-tqor) الدُّكْتُورُ the doctor (ah-dook-tqor) (eye-na) أَيْنَ الدُّكْتُور؟ the doctor where

(al-foom-dooq) الفُنْدُقُ the hotel (in front of) (ah-ra-zhool) الرَّجُلُ the man (ah-ra-zhool) (eye-na) أَيْنَ الرَّجُل؟ the man where

(ah-ssoo-ra) الصُّورَةُ the picture (next to) (ah-teh-lee-foon) التِّلْفُونُ the telephone (ah-teh-lee-foon) (eye-na) أَيْنَ التِّلْفُون؟ the telephone where

Do you recognize قِبَّةُ الصُّخْرَةِ (ah-ssahk-ra) (qoob-baht) the Dome of the Rock (al-ann) الآن (al-ann) fill in each blank on the picture below مَعَ (mar) the best possible one of these little (ka-lee-maat) كلمات (ka-lee-maat) words



\_\_\_\_\_ عَطْلَةٌ vacation / sabbatical ..... (rooT-la)..... عَطْلَةٌ

\_\_\_\_\_ عَطْلٌ congestion / tardiness ..... (ta-Teel)..... تَعْطِيلٌ

\_\_\_\_\_ سَيَّارَةٌ مُعْطَلَةٌ broken down car . (moo-rahT-Ta-la)(sy-yaa-ra)

You have learned the days of the week, so now it is time to learn <sup>(ah-shoo-hoor)</sup> الشُّهُور of the year and all <sub>the months</sub> the different kinds of <sup>(al-zhao)</sup> الجَوَّ. <sub>weather</sub> In Arabic there are two names for each month. One set of names sounds very similar to English and is given below. You will find the second set in the yellow color blocks at the bottom of these pages. Try to learn them both.



When someone asks, <sup>(al-yohm)</sup> "كَيْفَ الجَوَّ الـيَوْمَ؟" <sub>today the weather</sub> <sup>(kay-fa)</sup> you have a variety of answers. Practice all the possible answers to this question on the next <sup>(ssahf-Ha)</sup> صَفْحَة. Practice using both sets of names so that you master both.

_____	January . . . (ah-thaa-nee)(kaa-noon) . . .	كانون الثاني
_____	February . . . . . (shoo-baaT) . . . . .	شباط
_____	March . . . . . (aa-daar) . . . . .	آذار
_____	April . . . . . (nee-saan) . . . . .	نيسان

(yu-wy-yar) (fee) (mooth-leezh) (al-zhao)  
 الجوّ مُتَلِجٌ في يَنَابرِ.  
 January in snowy the weather (is)

(feh-bry-yar) (fee) (moom-Tair) (al-zhao)  
 الجوّ مُمَطِرٌ في فِبرَابرِ.  
 February rainy the weather (is)

(maara) (fee) (moom-Tair) (al-zhao)  
 الجوّ مُمَطِرٌ في مارِسِ.  
 March rainy the weather (is)

(ah-breel) (fee) (la-Teef) (al-zhao)  
 الجوّ لَطِيفٌ في أَبريلِ.  
 April pleasant

(may) (fee) (ree-yaaH) (hoo-naa-ka)  
 هُنَاكَ رِياحٌ في مَليِ.  
 wind there is

(yoo-nee-yoo) (la-Teef) (al-zhao)  
 الجوّ لَطِيفٌ في يُونِيوِ.  
 June pleasant the weather

(yoo-lee-yoo) (zhid-dahn) (Haar)  
 الجوّ حارٌّ جَدًّا في يُولِيوِ.  
 July very hot

(rohsht) (zhid-dahn) (Haar)  
 الجوّ حارٌّ جَدًّا في عُشتِ.  
 August very hot

(seb-tem-br) (la-Teef) (al-zhao)  
 الجوّ لَطِيفٌ في سِبْتَمبِرِ.  
 (al-zhao) (la-Teef) (al-zhao)

(ook-too-br) (raa-im)  
 الجوّ غَائمٌ في أَكْتُوبِرِ.  
 cloudy

(noo-wem-br) (bear-id)  
 الجوّ بارِدٌ في نُوبِبرِ.  
 cold

(dee-sem-br) (ra-dee')  
 الجوّ رَكيءٌ في دِيسَمبِرِ.  
 bad



(feh-bry-yar) (al-zhao) (kay-fa)  
 كَيْفَ الجوّ في فِبرَابرِ؟  
 the weather how

(ah-breel) (kay-fa)  
 كَيْفَ الجوّ في أَبريلِ؟

(may) (kay-fa)  
 كَيْفَ الجوّ في مَليِ؟

(rohsht) (kay-fa)  
 كَيْفَ الجوّ في عُشتِ؟

## الجوّ لَطِيفٌ في أَبريلِ.

- \_\_\_\_\_ May ..... (ay-yaar) ..... أيار
- \_\_\_\_\_ June ..... (Ha-zee-raan) ..... حَزيران
- \_\_\_\_\_ July ..... (tahm-mooz) ..... تَمُوز
- \_\_\_\_\_ August ..... (aab) ..... آب

(al-ann) **الآن** ← for the seasons of **السنة** ← ...  
now the year

(ah-shee-taa') **الشتاء** ←  
the winter



(al-ha-reef) **الخريف** ←  
the fall



(ah-saif) **الصيف** ←  
the summer

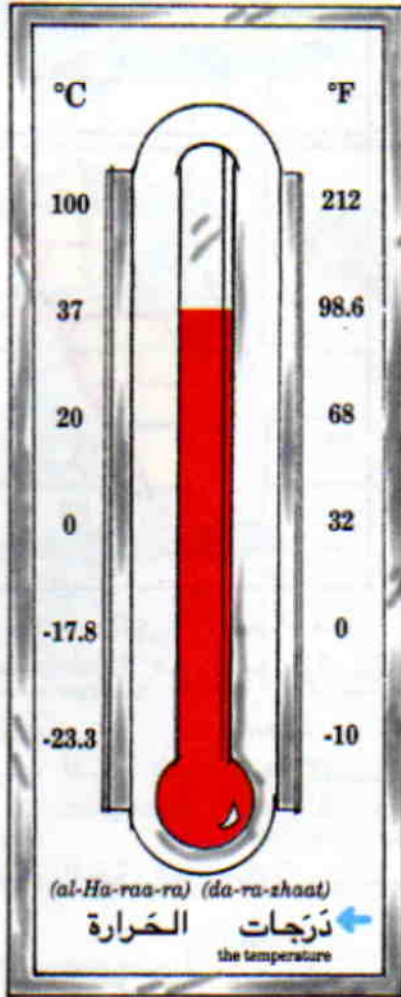


(ar-ra-be-ya) **الربيع** ←  
the spring



(me-ow-ya) (da-ra-zha) **مئوية** ←  
Celsius

(faa-ren-hate) **فاهرينهايت** ←  
Fahrenheit



At this point, it is **جيدة** ← idea to familiarize  
(zhy-ye-da) (a) good

yourself **مع** ← temperatures. Carefully study the  
(mar) with

thermometer because **الحرارة** ← in  
(al-Ha-raa-ra) (da-ra-zhaat) the temperature

**قطر و البحرين و لبنان** ← is calculated on  
(loob-naan) (wa) (al-baH-rain) (wa) (qa-Tar)  
Lebanon Bahrain Qatar

the basis of Celsius (not Fahrenheit).

To convert °C to °F, multiply by 1.8 and add 32.

$$37^{\circ}\text{C} \times 1.8 = 66.6 + 32 = 98.6^{\circ}\text{F}$$

To convert °F to °C, subtract 32 and multiply by 0.55.

$$98.6^{\circ}\text{F} - 32 = 66.6 \times 0.55 = 37^{\circ}\text{C}$$

- September..... (eye-lool)..... أيلول ←
- October.... (al-ow-wahl)(tish-reen)..... تشرين الأول
- November.... (ah-thaa-nee)(tish-reen) .. تشرين الثاني
- December.... (al-ow-wahl)(kaa-noon) ..... كانون الأول

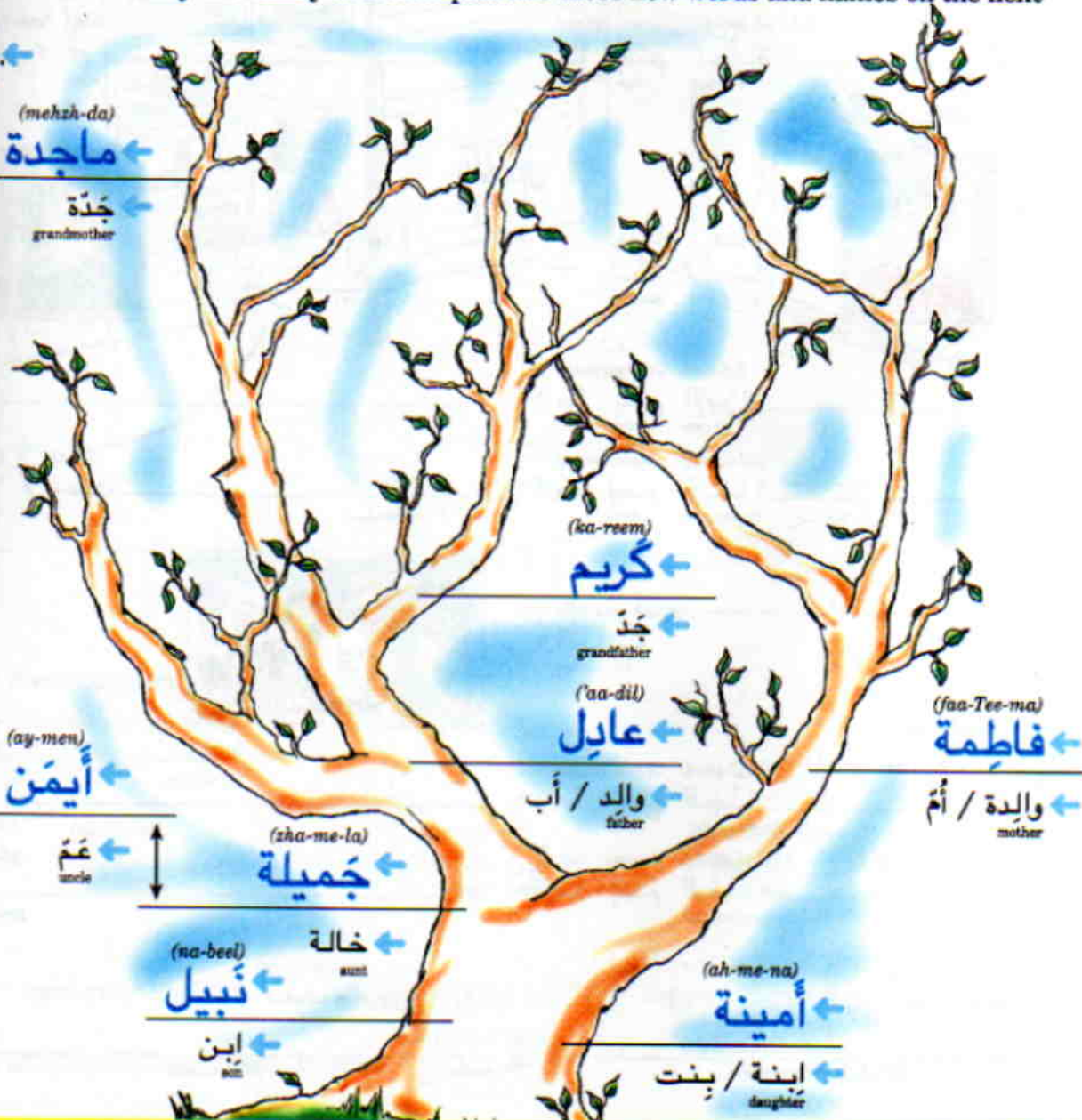


← العائِلة وَ الأسرة وَ البَيْت  
(al-bait) (wa) (al-ooq-ra) (wa) (al-raa-ee-la)  
the house and the family and the extended family

(al-ooq-ra) ← usually eats together (wa) (ah-saa-baaH) (fee) وَ في الصَّبَاح ← on holidays. Our family tree introduces you  
the family the morning in  
to some family members starting (mar) مَعَ the grandfather Karim وَ the grandmother Mezhdha.  
with

Arabic does not have (al-ka-lee-ma) ← for "cousin" so extended family members are referred to as  
the word ← the "son of the maternal uncle" (ow) أَوْ ← the "son of the paternal aunt." You'll find these names in  
or  
the yellow boxes. Study the family tree then practice these new words and names on the next

(sachf-Ha) ← صفحة  
page



- \_\_\_\_\_ son of paternal uncle ..... (ahm)(ibn) ..... ابن عم ←
- \_\_\_\_\_ son of paternal aunt ..... (ahm-ma)(ibn) ..... ابن عم ←
- \_\_\_\_\_ son of maternal uncle ..... (khaal)(ibn) ..... ابن خال ←
- \_\_\_\_\_ son of maternal aunt ..... (khaa-la)(ibn) ..... ابن خالة ←

(al-oos-ra) **الأسرة** ← by name. Study the following examples carefully.  
the family

(ees-mook) (maa) **ما اسمك؟** ← (ees-me) **إسمي** ←  
your name what (is) (fill in your name) my name (is)

(al-weh-lee-dane) **الوالدين** ←  
the parents



(al-weh-lid) (eesm) (maa) **ما اسم الوالد؟** ← (ahb) (weh-lid) **والد / أب** ←  
the father name what dad father

(al-weh-lee-da) (eesm) (maa) **ما اسم الوالدة؟** ← (oom) (weh-lee-da) **والدة / أم** ←  
the mother name what mom mother



(al-ahT-faal) **الأطفال**  
the children

(bint) (ib-na) (ibn) (ahkt) (ahk) **ابنة / بنت = ابن = أخت - أخ** ←  
daughter son sister brother



(al-ibn) (eesm)(maa) **ما اسم الابن؟** ← (ibn) **ابن** ←  
the son name what son

(al-ib-na) (eesm)(maa) **ما اسم الابنة؟** ← (bint) (ib-na) **ابنة / بنت** ←  
the daughter name daughter

(al-ah-qaa-rib) **الأقارب** ←  
the relatives



(al-zhed) (eesm)(maa) **ما اسم الجد؟** ← (zhed) **جد** ←  
the grandfather name grandfather

(al-zhed-da) (eesm) **ما اسم الجدة؟** ← (zhed-da) **جدة** ←  
the grandmother grandmother

Now you ask —

And answer —

(What is your name?)

(My name is ...)

daughter of paternal uncle ..... (ahm)(ib-na) ..... **ابنة عم**  
daughter of paternal aunt .... (ahm-ma)(ib-na) .... **ابنة عمة**  
daughter of maternal uncle ..... (khaal)(ib-na) ..... **ابنة خال**  
daughter of maternal aunt ..... (khaa-la)(ib-na) .... **ابنة خالة**

(mahT-bahk)

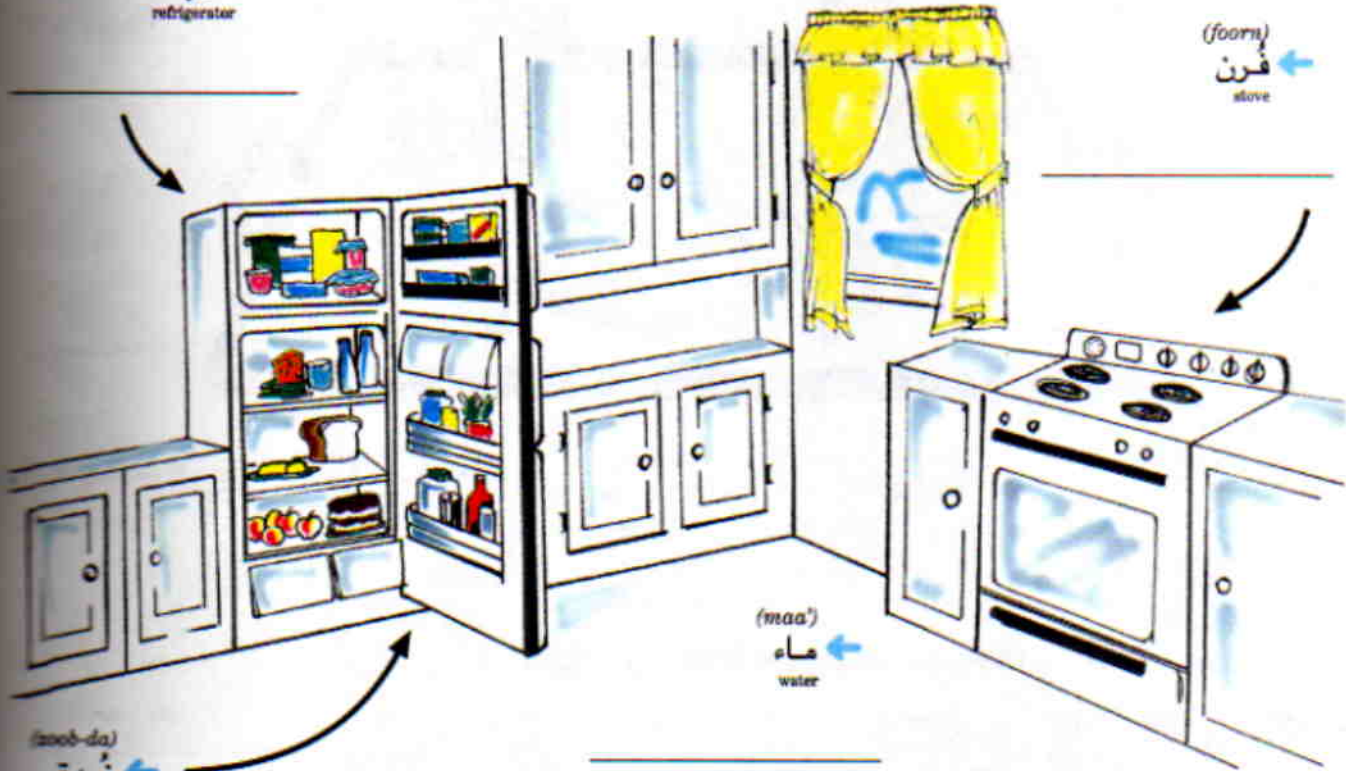
مَطْبَخ ←  
kitchen

(tha-laa-zha)

ثَلَاجَة ←  
refrigerator

(foorn)

فَرْن ←  
stove



(maa')  
ماء ←  
water

(zoob-da)

زُبْدَة ←  
butter

(Ha-leeb)

حَلِيب ←  
milk

(ra-sseer)

عَصِير ←  
juice

Answer these questions aloud.

(th-tha-laa-zha) (fee) (al-ra-sseer)

أَيْنَ العَصِير فِي الثَلَاجَة؟  
the refrigerator in the juice

(al-ra-sseer) (eye-na)

أَيْنَ العَصِير؟  
the juice where

(al-Ha-leeb)

أَيْنَ الحَلِيب؟  
the milk

(al-maa')

أَيْنَ المَاء؟  
the water where

(ah-zoob-da) (eye-na)

أَيْنَ الزُبْدَة؟  
the butter where

(al-ann)

الآن  
now

(ah-ssahf-Ha)

الصفحة  
the page

open your book to the page with the labels و remove the next group of labels و

proceed to label all these things in your مَطْبَخ.  
kitchen

ابن أخ ←  (ahk)(ibn).....

ابن أخت  (ohkt)(ibn).....

ابنة أخ  (ahk)(ib-na).....

ابنة أخت  (ohkt)(ib-na).....

(malH) ملح salt

(ahs-see) (fool-fool) فلفل أسود pepper

(kasa) كأس glass

(asa-He-fa) (zha-ree-da) جريدة / صحيفة newspaper

(feen-zhaan) فنجان cup

(zah-ra) زهرة flower

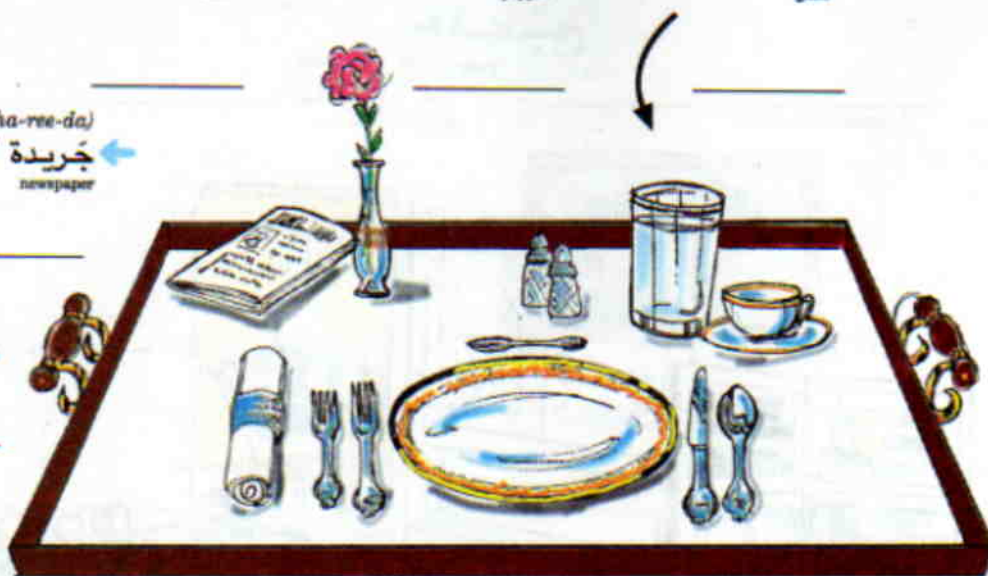
(mil'a-qa) ملعقة spoon

(min-deel) منديل napkin

(shoo-ka) شوكة fork

(Ta-bahq) طبق plate

(rik-keen) سكين knife



Don't forget to label all these things in your home و office.



(al-hee-zaa-na) (fee) (ah-shay) (ah-shay) (eye-na) أين الشاي؟ الشاي في الخزانة. the cupboard the tea the tea

(hee-zaa-na) خزانة cupboard

(shay) شاي tea



(al-qah-see) (eye-na) أين القهوة؟ the coffee

(qah-see) قهوة coffee



(al-hobz) (eye-na) أين الخبز؟ the bread

(hoobz) خبز bread

Do not forget to use every opportunity to say these الكلمات out loud.

(shid-dahn) (moo-him) (heh-daa) هذا مهم جداً. very important this (is)

طَبَخَ to cook ..... (Ta-bahk-ha) ..... مطبخ kitchen ..... (mahT-bahk) ..... مطبوخ cooked ..... (mahT-boohk) .....

(sh-eyf)	(ree-saa-la)	(Teeb)	(soot-ra)
أَسِيفٌ	رِسَالَةٌ	طِيبٌ	سُتْرَةٌ
(sh-ayk-fa)	(Taa-bahh)	(reh-Tur)	(seer-uel)
أَسِيفَةٌ	طَابِعٌ	عِطْرٌ	سِرْوَالٌ
(sa-reer)	(be-Taa-qa)	(meahT)	(zheenz)
سَرِيرٌ	بِطَاقَةٌ	مِشْطٌ	دَجِينِزٌ
(see-seh-da)	(sa-far) (zhao-woez)	(meer-Tahf)	(short)
وِسَادَةٌ	جَوَازٌ سَفَرٌ	مِعْطَفٌ	شُورْتٌ
(see-Taa')	(teth-kee-ra)	(mo-Thghl-la)	(daak-he-lee-ya) (meh-leh-bez)
غِطَاءٌ	تَذَكِيرَةٌ	مِظْلَةٌ	مَلَابِيسٌ دَاخِلِيَّةٌ
(saa-ra)	(Ha-qee-ba)	(foos-ten)	(zha-weer-rib)
سَاعَةٌ	حَقِيبَةٌ	فُسْتَانٌ	جَوَارِبٌ
(mir-et)	(yeā) (Ha-qee-bet)	(qa-meess)	(noun) (meh-leh-bez)
مِرَاةٌ	حَقِيبَةٌ يَدٌ	قَمِيصٌ	مَلَابِيسٌ نَوْمٌ
(meer-sahD)	(mehH-fa-Tha)	(soot-ra)	(Hahm-maam) (thohb)
مِغْسَلٌ	مِحْفَظَةٌ	سُتْرَةٌ	ثَوْبٌ حَمَامٌ
(foe-ahT)	(foo-looa)	(thohb)	(ah-sahbt)
فُوطٌ	فُلُوسٌ	ثَوْبٌ	السَّبَبْتُ
(meer-HoaD)	(bahh-kee-ya) (be-Taa-qaht)	(He-dair')	(al-ah-IJahd)
مِرْحَاضٌ	بِطَاقَةٌ بَنْكِيَّةٌ	جِذَاءٌ	الْأَحَدُ
(mash-ahair-sha)	(sa-far) (sheo-kef)	(ree-yaā-Da) (He-dair')	(ah-ith-nayn)
رَشَاشَةٌ	شِيكَاتٌ سَفَرٌ	جِذَاءٌ رِيَاضَةٌ	الْإِثْنَيْنِ
(shahs-ra) (aa-lit)	(tahss-weer) (aa-lit)	(hoof-fez)	(ah-thoo-ia-thaa')
أَلَةٌ طِبَاطِئٌ	أَلَةٌ تَصْوِيرٌ	حُقَازٌ	الثَّلَاثَاءُ
(yo-zohm)	(feelm)	(qoob-ba)	(al-ar-ba-qa')
قَلَمٌ	فِيلْمٌ	قُبُوعَةٌ	الرَّابِعَاءُ
(sh-lee-fz-own)	(see-baa-Ha) (leh-bez)	(beed-la)	(al-ha-meess)
تَلْيِيفِزِيٌّ	لِبَاسٌ سِبَاحَةٌ	بِدَلَةٌ	الْخَمِيسُ
(shoo-boo-fair)	(nahI)	(rahb-Ta)	(al-zhoo-moo-ah)
كَمْبِيُوتَرٌ	نَعْلٌ	رَبِطَةٌ	الجُمُعَةُ
(saa-ra-qa)	(shem-see-ya) (naTh-Thaa-ra)	(qa-meess)	(sy-yeed) (sa-far)
وَرَقَةٌ	نَظَّارَةٌ شَمْسِيَّةٌ	قَمِيصٌ	سَفَرٌ سَعِيدٌ!
(naTh-Thaa-ra)	(foor-shet)	(min-deel)	(ma-brook)
نَظَّارَةٌ	فُرْشَاةٌ	مِنْدِيلٌ	مَبْرُوكٌ!
(meh-ahel-la)	(al-es-naan) (ma-zhoon)		(min) (ah-naa)
مَجَلَّةٌ	مَعْجُونُ الْأَسْنَانِ		أَنَا مِنْ
(mah-la)	(esaa-boon)	(al-r-ra-be-ya) (ah-ta-rahI-la-ma) (ahn) (oo-re-do)	أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَتَعَلَّمَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ.
سَلَةٌ	صَابُونٌ		إِسْمِي
(saa-shah)	(shahf-ra)		(ees-me)
كِتَابٌ	شَفْرَةٌ		

## PLUS . . .

This book includes a number of other innovative features unique to the “10 minutes a day®” Series. At the back of this book, you will find twelve pages of flash cards. Cut them out and flip through them at least once a day.

On pages 116, 117 and 118 you will find a beverage guide and a menu guide. Don't wait until your trip to use them. Clip out the menu guide and use it tonight at the dinner table. Take them both with you the next time you dine at your favorite Middle Eastern or North African restaurant.

By using the special features in this book, you will be speaking Arabic before you know it.

(sy-yeed) (sa-far)  
← سَفَرٌ سَعِيدٌ!  
Have a good trip!



(deen)  
**دين**  
religion

Whether you are in **الجزائر** (al-zheh-zair-ir) Algeria (deen), **اليمن** (al-yeh-men) Yemen, or **لبنان** (loob-naan) Lebanon, religion is very important in everyday life. A person's **دين** (deen) religion is usually one of the following:

\_\_\_\_\_ (moos-lim) **مُسْلِم** (Muslim) (♠)

\_\_\_\_\_ (moos-lee-ma) **مُسْلِمَة** (Muslim) (♠)

\_\_\_\_\_ (meh-see-He) **مَسِيحِي** (Christian) (♠)

\_\_\_\_\_ (meh-see-He-ya) **مَسِيحِيَّة** (Christian) (♠)

\_\_\_\_\_ (zhaa-mehh) (mahs-zhid) **مَسْجِد \ جَامِع** (mosque)

\_\_\_\_\_ (ka-nee-sa) **كَنِيسَة** (church)

(na-ahm) (mahs-zhid) (heh-daa) (hel) **هَلْ هَذَا مَسْجِدٌ؟** (Is this mosque?)  
yes (k) mosque this (k)

(zha-deed) (mahs-zhid) (heh-daa) (hel) **هَلْ هَذَا مَسْجِدٌ جَدِيدٌ؟** (Is this a new mosque?)  
new mosque (k)

(qa-deem) (mahs-zhid) (hel) **هَلْ هَذَا مَسْجِدٌ قَدِيمٌ؟** (Is this an old mosque?)  
old (k)



**مَسْجِدُ الْحَسَنِ الثَّانِي - الدَّارُ الْبَيْضَاءُ**  
Casablanca Hassan II Mosque

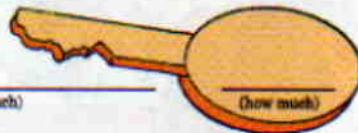
Let's learn how to say "I" and "we" **بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ** (bil-r-ra-be-ya) in Arabic: **أَنَا** (ah-naa) (I)

\_\_\_\_\_ **نَحْنُ** (naH-noo) (we)

Test yourself - write each sentence on the next page for more practice. Add your own personal variations as well.

(al-be-Taa-ga) **البَطَاقَة؟**  
the passport

(how much)



(how much)

\_\_\_\_\_ **طَبَخَ** chef (♠) ..... (Tahb-baahk) ..... **طَبَّاحٌ**   
 \_\_\_\_\_ **طَبَخَ** chef (♠) ..... (Tahb-baa-kha) ..... **طَبَّاحَة**   
 \_\_\_\_\_ **طَبَخَ** cooked food ..... (Ta-beehk) ..... **طَبِيخٌ**

(moos-lee-ma) (ah-naa) ← أنا مُسَلِمٌ  
Muslim (♣) 1

(moos-lee-ma) (ah-naa) ← أنا مُسَلِمَةٌ  
Muslim (♣) 1

(ahm-ree-kee) (ah-naa) ← أنا أَمْرِيكِي  
American (♣) 1

(ahm-ree-kee-ya) (ah-naa) ← أنا أَمْرِيكِيَّة  
American (♣) 1

(oos-too-raa-lee) (ah-naa) ← أنا أَسْتْرَالِي  
Australian (♣) 1

(oos-too-raa-lee-ya) (ah-naa) ← أنا أَسْتْرَالِيَّة  
Australian (♣) 1

(in-zhlee-zee) ← أنا اِنْجِلِيْزِي  
English (♣) 1

(in-zhlee-zee-ya) (ah-naa) ← أنا اِنْجِلِيْزِيَّة  
English (♣) 1

(mah-see-He) ← أنا مَسِيْحِي  
Christian (♣) 1

(al-bahnk) (fee) ← أنا فِي الْبَنْكِ  
the bank in

(al-foon-dooq) (fee) (naH-noo) ← نَحْنُ فِي الْفُنْدُقِ  
the hotel in we

(al-ma-Tahm) (fee) (naH-noo) ← نَحْنُ فِي الْمَطْعَمِ  
the restaurant in we

(ahb) ← أنا أَبُ  
dad

(oom) ← أنا أُمُّ  
mom 1

To negate any of these statements, simply add **لَسْتُ** after "أنا."

(ahm-ree-kee) (les-too) (ah-naa) ← أنا لَسْتُ أَمْرِيكِي  
American (♣) am not 1

(moos-lee-ma) (les-too) (ah-naa) ← أنا لَسْتُ مُسَلِمَةٌ  
Muslim (♣) am not 1

Drill all of these sentences again but with **لَسْتُ** (les-too) and **الآن** (al-ann) take a piece of paper. Our

أسرة ← from earlier had a reunion. Identify everyone below by writing the correct

كلمة ← next to each person — أم, أب and so on. Then go through and ask

each person's name. ما اسمك؟



← صدِّقُ to believe ..... (ssahd-da-qa) .....

صدقة ..... (ssa-da-qa) .....

← تصدِّقُ to give to charity ..... (ta-ssahd-da-qa) .....

صدِّقُ



أَتَعَلَّمُ  
I learn

You have already used two very important phrases: أريدُ (oo-ree-do) I want and عندي (rin-dee) I have. Although you might be able to get by مَعَ (mar) with only these, let's assume you want to do better. Let's start مَعَ these key words.

(naH-noo)

نَحْنُ  
we

(ahn-toom)

أَنْتُمْ  
you (plural)

(hoom)

هُمْ  
they

(ah-naa)

أَنَا  
I

(n-ta)

أَنْتِ  
you (f)

(n-tee)

أَنْتِ  
you (f)

(hoo-wa)

هُوَ  
he / it

(he-ah)

هِيَ  
she / it

Note: هِيَ (he-ah) and هُوَ (hoo-wa) can also mean "it."

Not too hard, is it? Draw lines between the matching الإنجليزية (al-in-zhlee-zee-ya) English and العربية (al-r-ra-be-ya) Arabic words below to see if you can keep هذه (al-ka-lee-maat) (keh-da-he) these الكلمات words straight in your mind.



- (naH-noo) نَحْنُ
- (hoo-wa) هُوَ
- (hoom) هُمْ
- (n-ta) أَنْتِ
- (he-ah) هِيَ
- (n-tee) أَنْتِ
- (ahn-toom) أَنْتُمْ
- أَنَا

- I
- you (f)
- he
- we
- she
- they
- you (f)
- you



صَدَقْ

- friendship .....(ssa-daa-qa) ..... صَدَاقَةٌ
- friend (f) .....(ssa-deeq) ..... صَدِيقٌ
- friend (f) .....(ssa-dee-qa) ..... صَدِيقَةٌ

(al-ann) (al-kee-taab) (heh-daa) (wa-ra-qa) ← How  
 الآن close الكتاب هذا and write out both columns of this practice on ورقة  
 now (n-ta) book this a piece of paper  
 did أنت do? You can say almost anything بالعربية with one basic formula: the "plug-in"  
 you (II) (seet-teh) basic و practical verbs و see how the "plug-in" formula works.  
 Write the verbs in the blanks after أنت have practiced saying them out loud many times.

_____	(ah-ta-keel-la-moo) أَتَكَلَّمُ I speak	_____	(ahf-ha-moo) أَفْهَمُ I understand
_____	(ahsh-ra-boo) أَشْرَبُ I drink	_____	(ee-la) (ahd-ha-boo) إِلَى أَذْهَبُ to I go
_____	(ah-ta-rahl-la-moo) أَتَعَلَّمُ I learn	_____	(ee-la) (ah-teh-zhoo) إِلَى أحتاجُ I need

In Arabic, the subject - I, we, you - is contained in the verb as you will see in the following patterns. Associate **أ** with the "I" form and **ن** with the "we" form. Study the following patterns carefully then write out your new verbs in the spaces provided.

_____	(nahf-ha-moo) نَفْهَمُ we understand	_____	(ahf-ha-moo) أَفْهَمُ I understand
_____	(ee-la) (nahd-ha-boo) إِلَى نَذْهَبُ to we go	_____	(ee-la) (ahd-ha-boo) إِلَى أَذْهَبُ to I go
_____	(ee-la) (nah-teh-zhoo) إِلَى نَحْتَاجُ we need	_____	(ee-la) (ah-teh-zhoo) إِلَى أحتاجُ I need
_____	(na-ta-keel-la-moo) نَتَكَلَّمُ we speak	_____	(ah-ta-keel-la-moo) أَتَكَلَّمُ I speak
_____	(nahsh-ra-boo) نَشْرَبُ we drink	_____	(ahsh-ra-boo) أَشْرَبُ I drink
_____	(na-ta-rahl-la-moo) نَتَعَلَّمُ we learn	_____	(ah-ta-rahl-la-moo) أَتَعَلَّمُ I learn

Did you hear the slight difference in pronunciation with these two patterns? Yes! "na" for "we" and "ah" for "I."

_____	بَدَأَ	to begin .....(beh-da-aa).....	بَدَأَ
_____		primitive .....(be-dair-ee).....	بَدَائِي
_____		beginning .....(be-dair-ya).....	بَدَايَةٌ

Next – the patterns for “you” (أنت) and “you” (أنت).

Note: • Both patterns start with “تـ” (تـ pronounced “ta” or تـ pronounced “too”)

• “You” (أنت) ends with “ينـ” which is pronounced “ee-na.”

(tahf-ha-me-na) تَفْهَمِينَ ←  
you (♀) understand

(ee-la) (tahd-ha-be-na) تَذْهَبِينَ إِلَى ←  
to you (♀) go

(ee-la) (taH-teh-zhee-na) تَحْتَاجِينَ إِلَى ←  
you (♀) need

(ta-ta-ke-l-la-me-na) تَتَكَلَّمِينَ ←  
you (♀) speak

(tahsh-ra-be-na) تَشْرَبِينَ ←  
you (♀) drink

(ta-ta-rahl-la-me-na) تَتَعَلَّمِينَ ←  
you (♀) learn

(tahf-ha-moo) تَفْهَمُ ←  
you (♂) understand

(ee-la) (tahd-ha-boo) تَذْهَبُ إِلَى ←  
to you (♂) go

(ee-la) (taH-teh-zhoo) تَحْتَاجُ إِلَى ←  
you (♂) need

(ta-ta-ke-l-la-moo) تَتَكَلَّمُ ←  
you (♂) speak

(tahsh-ra-boo) تَشْرَبُ ←  
you (♂) drink

(ta-ta-rahl-la-moo) تَتَعَلَّمُ ←  
you (♂) learn

The patterns for “he” and “she” are easy.

Note: • The pattern for “she” is identical to the “you” (أنت) form so you can practice these together.

• The “he” pattern starts with “يـ” (يـ pronounced “ya” or يـ pronounced “yoo”)

(tahf-ha-moo) تَفْهَمُ ←  
she understands

(ee-la) (tahd-ha-boo) تَذْهَبُ إِلَى ←  
to she goes

(ee-la) (taH-teh-zhoo) تَحْتَاجُ إِلَى ←  
she needs

(ta-ta-ke-l-la-moo) تَتَكَلَّمُ ←  
she speaks

(tahsh-ra-boo) تَشْرَبُ ←  
she drinks

(ta-ta-rahl-la-moo) تَتَعَلَّمُ ←  
she learns

(yahf-ha-moo) يَفْهَمُ ←  
he understands

(ee-la) (yahd-ha-boo) يَذْهَبُ إِلَى ←  
to he goes

(ee-la) (yaH-teh-zhoo) يَحْتَاجُ إِلَى ←  
he needs

(ya-ta-ke-l-la-moo) يَتَكَلَّمُ ←  
he speaks

(yahsh-ra-boo) يَشْرَبُ ←  
he drinks

(ya-ta-rahl-la-moo) يَتَعَلَّمُ ←  
he learns

- \_\_\_\_\_ مَبْدِئِي: beginner ..... (moob-teh-dih').....
- \_\_\_\_\_ مَبَادِي: principles ..... (ma-baa-dih') .....
- \_\_\_\_\_ مَدْرَسَةٌ إِبْتَدَائِيَّة: elementary school . (ib-tee-dair-ee-ya)(ma-dra-sa) ..

Now for <sup>(ahn-toom)</sup> أنتم ← and <sup>(hoom)</sup> هم ←. They are similar. Both end in the sound "oo-na." Otherwise the

"you all" pattern begins with **ت** and the "they" pattern with **ي**. That's it.

(yahf-ha-moo-na) يَفْهَمُونَ ←  
they understand

(ee-la) (yahd-ha-boo-na) يَذْهَبُونَ ←  
to they go

(ee-la) (yaH-teh-zhoo-na) يَحْتَاجُونَ ←  
they need

(ya-ta-kei-la-moo-na) يَتَكَلَّمُونَ ←  
they speak

(yahsh-ra-boo-na) يَشْرَبُونَ ←  
they drink

(ya-ta-rahi-la-moo-na) يَتَعَلَّمُونَ ←  
they learn

(tahf-ha-moo-na) تَفْهَمُونَ ←  
you all understand

(ee-la) (tahd-ha-boo-na) تَذْهَبُونَ ←  
to you all go

(ee-la) (taH-teh-zhoo-na) تَحْتَاجُونَ ←  
you all need

(ta-ta-kei-la-moo-na) تَتَكَلَّمُونَ ←  
you all speak

(tahsh-ra-boo-na) تَشْرَبُونَ ←  
you all drink

(ta-ta-rahi-la-moo-na) تَتَعَلَّمُونَ ←  
you all learn

Initially you won't use the <sup>(ahn-toom)</sup> أنتم form a lot so we don't focus on it. Just remember to speak slowly و clearly و you will be understood. Arabic speakers will be delighted you have taken the time to learn their language. Here are six more verbs.

(aa-koo-loo) أَكُلُ ←  
I eat

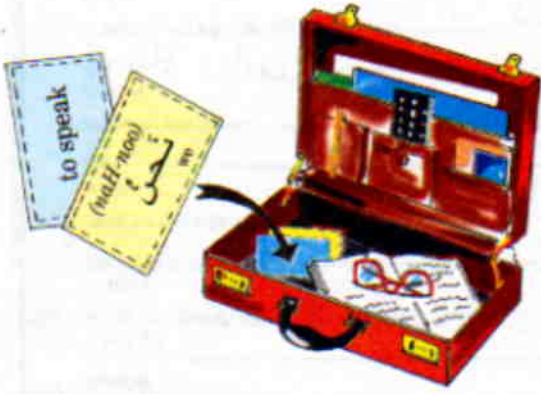
(ah-droo-soo) أَدْرُسُ ←  
I study

(ee-koo-noo) أَسْكُنُ ←  
I live

(oo-seh-fee-roo) أَسَافِرُ ←  
I travel

(oor-see-loo) أَرْسِلُ ←  
I send

(ah-ree-foo) أَعْرِفُ ←  
I know



At the back of <sup>(n-ta)</sup> <sup>(al-kee-taab)</sup> <sup>(heh-daa)</sup> هَذَا الكِتَابُ أَنْتَ will find twelve pages of flash cards to help you learn <sup>(heh-da-he)</sup> هَذِهِ. Cut them out; carry them in your briefcase, purse, pocket <sup>(ow)</sup> أو knapsack; و review them whenever <sup>(n-ta)</sup> أَنْتَ have a free moment.

- \_\_\_\_\_ عادَ ←  to return ..... (reh-da).....
- \_\_\_\_\_ عادَ  return .....(ow-da).....
- \_\_\_\_\_ عادَ  usually ..... (raa-da-tahn) .....

Practice what <sup>(n-ta)</sup> أَنْتَ ← have learned by filling in the blanks with the correct form of the verb.  
you (f)

(al-r-ra-be-ya) (ah-ta-kel-la-moo) ←  
العَرَبِيَّةُ أَتَكَلِّمُ  
Arabic I speak

(al-r-ra-be-ya) (ta-ta-kel-la-moo)  
العَرَبِيَّةُ تَتَكَلَّمُ  
you (f) speak / she speaks

(al-in-zhlee-zee-ya) (ta-ta-kel-la-me-na)  
الإنجليزية تَتَكَلَّمِينَ  
English you (f) speak

(al-in-zhlee-zee-ya) (ya-ta-kel-la-moo)  
الإنجليزية يَتَكَلَّمُ  
he speaks

(al-fa-rahn-see-ya) (na-ta-kel-la-moo)  
الفرنسية نَتَكَلَّمُ  
French we speak

(al-see-baa-noe-ya) (ya-ta-kel-la-moo-na)  
الإسبانية يَتَكَلَّمُونَ  
Spanish they speak

(al-r-ra-be-ya) (ahf-ha-moo) ←  
العَرَبِيَّةُ أَفْهَمُ  
Arabic I understand

(al-r-ra-be-ya) (tahf-ha-moo)  
العَرَبِيَّةُ تَفْهَمُ  
you (f) understand / she understands

(al-in-zhlee-zee-ya) (tahf-ha-me-na)  
العَرَبِيَّةُ تَفْهَمِينَ  
you (f) understand

(al-in-zhlee-zee-ya) (yahf-ha-moo)  
الإنجليزية يَفْهَمُ  
he understands

(al-fa-rahn-see-ya) (nahf-ha-moo)  
الفرنسية نَفْهَمُ  
French we understand

(al-fa-rahn-see-ya) (yahf-ha-moo-na)  
الفرنسية يَفْهَمُونَ  
French they understand

(al-maa) (ahsh-ra-boo) ←  
الماء أَشْرَبُ  
the water I drink

(al-maa) (tahsh-ra-boo)  
الماء تَشْرَبُ  
you (f) drink / she drinks

(al-ra-aseer) (tahsh-ra-be-na)  
العصير تَشْرَبِينَ  
the juice you (f) drink

(al-ra-aseer) (yahsh-ra-boo)  
العصير يَشْرَبُ  
he drinks

(sh-shay) (nahsh-ra-boo)  
الشاي نَشْرَبُ  
the tea we drink

(al-qa-see) (yahsh-ra-boo-na)  
القهوة يَشْرَبُونَ  
the coffee they drink

(al-foom-dooq) (ee-la) (ahd-ha-boo) ←  
الفندق إِلَى أَذْهَبُ  
the hotel to I go

(al-foom-dooq) (ee-la) (tahd-ha-boo)  
الفندق تَذْهَبُ إِلَى  
you (f) go / she goes

(al-bahnk) (ee-la) (tahd-ha-be-na)  
البنك تَذْهَبِينَ إِلَى  
the bank you (f) go

(al-ma-Tahm) (ee-la) (yahd-ha-boo)  
المطعم يَذْهَبُ إِلَى  
the restaurant he goes

(gh-ssahf) (ee-la) (nahd-ha-boo)  
الصف نَذْهَبُ إِلَى  
the class we go

(gh-ssahf) (yahd-ha-boo-na)  
الصف يَذْهَبُونَ إِلَى  
the class they go

(al-r-ra-be-ya) (ah-ta-rahl-la-moo) ←  
العَرَبِيَّةُ أَتَعَلَّمُ  
Arabic I learn

(al-in-zhlee-zee-ya) (ta-ta-rahl-la-moo)  
الإنجليزية تَتَعَلَّمُ  
English you (f) learn / she learns

(maas-ur)(rahn) (ta-ta-rahl-la-me-na)  
عَنْ مِصْرَ تَتَعَلَّمِينَ  
Egypt about you (f) learn

(maas-ur)(rahn) (ya-ta-rahl-la-moo)  
عَنْ مِصْرَ يَتَعَلَّمُ  
about he learns

(al-shar-zair-ir)(rahn) (na-ta-rahl-la-moo)  
عَنْ الْجَزَائِرِ نَتَعَلَّمُ  
Algeria we learn

(Libya)(rahn) (ya-ta-rahl-la-moo-na)  
عَنْ لِيبيَا يَتَعَلَّمُونَ  
Libya they learn

(taak-see) (ee-la) (aH-teh-zhoo) ←  
تاكسي إِلَى أَحْتَاجُ  
(a) taxi I need

(bahnk) (ee-la) (taH-teh-zhoo)  
بنك تَحْتَاجُ إِلَى  
(a) bank you (f) need / she needs

(foom-dooq) (ee-la) (taH-teh-zhee-na)  
فندق نَحْتَاجِينَ إِلَى  
(a) hotel you (f) need

(qa-wa)(feen-zhaan) (ee-la) (yahH-teh-zhoo)  
فنجان قهوة يَحْتَاجُ إِلَى  
coffee (a) cup he needs

(shay)(feen-zhaan) (ee-la) (naH-teh-zhoo)  
فنجان شاي نَحْتَاجُ إِلَى  
tea (a) cup we need

(shay)(feen-zhaan) (ee-la) (yahH-teh-zhoo-na)  
فنجان شاي يَحْتَاجُونَ إِلَى  
they need

\_\_\_\_\_ ← عادات customs / habits ..... (raa-daat) .....   
\_\_\_\_\_ عَادَ habitual ..... (aar-tee-eh-dee) .....   
\_\_\_\_\_ to be accustomed to ..... (aar-teh-da) .....

Now take a break, walk around the room, take a deep breath and do the next six verbs.

(ka-theg-rah-n) (aa-koo-lop) ←  
كثيراً أكل  
a lot I eat

(ka-theg-rah-n) (taa-koo-lop) ←  
كثيراً تأكل  
a lot you (f) eat / she eats

(qa-leg-lahn) (taa-koo-lee-na) ←  
قليلاً تأكلين  
a little you (f) eat

(qa-leg-lahn) (yaa-koo-lop) ←  
قليلاً يأكل  
a little he eats

(shay') (eye) (na-koo-lop) (la) ←  
أى شيء لا تأكل  
nothing we eat

(shay') (kool) (ya-koo-lop) ←  
كل شيء يأكلون  
everything they eat

(al-r-ra-be-ya) (ah-droo-soo) ←  
العربية أدرس  
French I study

(al-fa-rah-n-see-ya) (ta-droo-soo) ←  
الفرنسية تدرس  
French you (f) study / she studies

(al-ees-baa-nee-ya) (ta-droo-see-na) ←  
الإسبانية تدرسين  
Spanish you (f) study

(al-ay-bree-ya) (ya-droo-soo) ←  
العبرية يدرس  
Hebrew he studies

(al-ahl-maa-nee-ya) (na-droo-soo) ←  
الألمانية ندرس  
German we study

(al-ee-Taa-lee-ya) (ya-droo-soo-na) ←  
الإيطالية يدرسون  
Italian they study

(in-zhla-tair-raa) (fee) (es-koo-noo) ←  
في إنجلترا أسكن  
England I live

(in-zhla-tair-raa) (fee) (tes-koo-noo) ←  
في إنجلترا تسكن  
England you (f) live / she lives

(ooz-too-raa-lee-yaq) (fee) (tes-koo-nee-na) ←  
في أستراليا تسكنين  
Australia you (f) live

(ooz-too-raa-lee-yaq) (yee-koo-noo) ←  
في أستراليا يسكن  
Australia he lives

(ahm-ree-kaa) (nee-koo-moo) ←  
في أمريكا نسكن  
the United States we live

(ka-na-daa) (yee-koo-noo-na) ←  
في كندا يسكنون  
Canada they live

(meess-ur)(ee-la) (oo-seh-fee-roo) ←  
إلى مصر أسافر  
Egypt to I travel

(meess-ur)(ee-la) (too-seh-fee-roo) ←  
إلى مصر تُسافرن  
Egypt you (f) travel / she travels

(al-ma-greb)(ee-la) (too-seh-fee-ree-na) ←  
إلى المغرب تُسافرين  
Morocco you (f) travel

(al-ma-greb) (yoo-seh-fee-roo) ←  
إلى المغرب يُسافرون  
Morocco he travels

(loob-naan) (noo-seh-fee-roo) ←  
إلى لبنان نُسافرون  
Lebanon we travel

(al-oor-daan) (yoo-seh-fee-roo-na) ←  
إلى الأردن يُسافرون  
Jordan they travel

(ree-saa-la) (oor-see-lop) ←  
رسالة أرسل  
(a) letter I send

(ree-saa-la) (toor-see-lop) ←  
رسالة تُرسِل  
(a) letter you (f) send / she sends

(be-Taa-qa) (toor-see-lee-na) ←  
بطاقة تُرسِلين  
(a) postcard you (f) send

(be-Taa-qa) (yoor-see-lop) ←  
بطاقة يُرسِل  
(a) postcard he sends

(al-kee-taab) (noor-see-lop) ←  
الكتاب نُرسِل  
the book we send

(be-Taa-qaat) (tha-laath) (yoor-see-lop-na) ←  
ثلاث بطاقات يُرسِلون  
three postcards they send

(ah-ree-foo) (ah-ree-foo) ←  
أعرف العبرية  
I know

(al-in-zhlee-zee-ya) (ta-ree-foo) ←  
الإنجليزية تُعرف  
English you (f) know / she knows

(al-roon-wen) (ta-ree-fee-na) ←  
العنوان تُعرفين  
the address you (f) know

(al-ees-baa-nee-ya) (ya-ree-foo) ←  
الإسبانية يُعرف  
Spanish he knows

(shay') (kool) (na-ree-foo) ←  
كل شيء نُعرف  
everything we know

(shay') (eye) (ya-ree-foo-na) (la) ←  
أى شيء لا يُعرفون  
nothing they know

\_\_\_\_\_ إلى فضل (fahD-Da-la) .....   
\_\_\_\_\_ من فضلك (fahD-lahk)(min) ..   
\_\_\_\_\_ تفضل (ta-fahD-Dahl) .....

(na-ahm)

(zha-dee-da)/(ka-lee-maat)

نَعْم, it is hard to get used to all those **كَلِمَاتٍ جَدِيدَةٍ**. ← But just keep practicing وَ before

you know it, **أَنْتَ** ← will be using them naturally. **الآنَ** ← is a perfect time to turn to the back

of **الْكِتَابِ** **هَذَا**, ← clip out your verb flash cards وَ start flashing. See if **أَنْتَ** ← can fill in

the blanks below. The correct **الْأَجْوِبَةُ** ← are at the bottom of **الْمِصْفَحَةِ** **هَذِهِ**. ←

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
(I speak Arabic.)
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
(We learn Arabic.)
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
(He studies Arabic.)
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
(She lives in the United States / America.)
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
(I travel to Jordan.)
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
(You (♠) send a postcard.)

In the following Steps, **أَنْتَ** ← will be introduced to more verbs and **أَنْتَ** ← should drill them in exactly the same way as **أَنْتَ** ← did in this section. Look up

**كَلِمَاتٍ جَدِيدَةٍ** ← in your **قَامُوسٍ** ← and make

up your own sentences. Try out your new words for that's how you make them yours to use on your holiday. Remember, the more **أَنْتَ** ← practice

**الآنَ** ← the more enjoyable your trip will be.



**حَظًّا سَعِيدًا** ←  
(sy-yeed) (Hahth)  
good luck

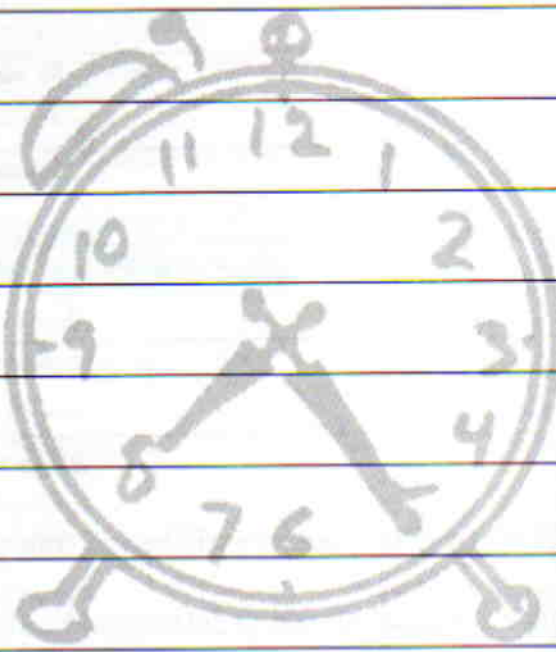
### الأجوبة

- |                         |                          |                           |                        |                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 ← أتكلّم العرَبِيَّة. | 2 ← نَتعلّم العرَبِيَّة. | 3 ← يَدْرُسُ العرَبِيَّة. | 4 ← نَسكُنُ في أمريكا. | 5 ← أسافِرُ إلى الأردن. | 6 ← تُرسلين بطاقة. |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|

*(ah-saa-ra)* *(kem)*  
**كَم السَّاعَة؟**  
time is it what

*(ta-ree-fee-na)* *(eye-yaam)* *(ah-shoo-hoor)*  
 تُعرِّفِين ← how to tell أَيْام ← of the week and الشُّهُور ← of the year. As a traveler  
you (f) know (fee) (ow) (loob-naan) (fee) the months  
 سوريا أو في لبنان، you need to be able to tell time in order to make reservations,  
Syria or Lebanon  
 schedule appointments and to catch الحافلات ← Here are the "basics."  
the buses

What time is it?	=	<i>(ah-saa-ra)</i> <i>(kem)</i> كَم السَّاعَة؟
before	=	<i>(qahb-la)</i> قَبْلُ
after	=	<i>(ba-da)</i> بَعْدَ
minus	=	<i>(ee-la)</i> الْأَ
the half	=	<i>(ah-nessf)</i> النِّصْفِ
the quarter	=	<i>(ah-roo-boy)</i> الرُّبْعِ
the third (20 minutes)	=	<i>(ah-thoo-loqth)</i> الثُّلُثِ
o'clock / hour	=	<i>(saa-ra)</i> سَاعَة
minute	=	<i>(da-qee-qa)</i> دَقِيقَة



*(al-ann)*  
 الآن ← quiz yourself. Fill in the missing letters below.  
now

before =	<input type="text"/>	the quarter =	<input type="text"/>
after =	<input type="text"/>	the third =	<input type="text"/>
the half =	<input type="text"/>	o'clock =	<input type="text"/>
What time is it?	<input type="text"/>		

\_\_\_\_\_ in the morning . . . *(ah-ssa-baaH)* *(fee)* . . . . . في الصُّبْحِ ←  
 \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening . . . *(al-ma-saa')* *(fee)* . . . . . في الْمَسَاءِ  
 \_\_\_\_\_ noon . . . . . *(ah-Doo-hur)* . . . . . الظُّهْر  
 \_\_\_\_\_ midnight . . . *(ah-lail)* *(moon-ta-ssahf)* . . . مُنْتَصَفِ اللَّيْلِ



← how are **الكلمات** **هذه** used? Study the examples **أسفل** ←  
words these below

(al-haa-me-sa) (ah-saa-ra) (in-na-haa)  
إنها الساعة الخامسة.  
five the hour it is

5:00

\_\_\_\_\_

(al-haa-me-sa) (ah-saa-ra) (in-na-haa)  
إنها الساعة الخامسة و عَشْرَة  
five and the hour it is

5:10

\_\_\_\_\_

(ah-saa-ra) (in-na-haa)  
إنها الساعة الخامسة و الرِّبْع  
the hour it is

5:15

\_\_\_\_\_

(ah-saa-ra) (in-na-haa)  
إنها الساعة الخامسة و الثَلَاث  
the hour it is

5:20

\_\_\_\_\_

(ah-saa-ra)  
إنها الساعة الخامسة و النِّصْف  
the hour it is

5:30

\_\_\_\_\_

(ee-la) (ah-seh-dee-sa)  
إنها الساعة السادسة إلا ثَلَاث  
six

5:40

\_\_\_\_\_

(ee-la) (ah-seh-dee-sa)  
إنها الساعة السادسة إلا رُبْع  
the hour it is

5:45

\_\_\_\_\_

(ah-seh-dee-sa)  
إنها الساعة السادسة إلا عَشْرَة  
the hour it is

5:50

\_\_\_\_\_

إنها الساعة السادسة.

6:00

\_\_\_\_\_

(moo-him) (al-aar-qaam) (al-ann) (es-ee-la)  
مهم ← learning الأرقام ← is? الآن answer the following أسئلة ← based on  
important the numbers questions  
(al-eeh-we-ha) (ah-sahf-Ha) (ah-saa-ra) (kem)  
أسفل ← below. الأجابة ← are at the bottom of الصفحة ← كم الساعة؟ ←  
the answers the page time is it what

8:00

١

4:30

٢

7:30

٣

9:20

٤

الأجابة

- ١ ← إنها الساعة الثامنة.
- ٢ ← إنها الساعة الرابعة و النِّصْف.
- ٣ ← إنها الساعة السابعة و النِّصْف.
- ٤ ← إنها الساعة التاسعة و الثَلَاث.

When <sup>(n-tee)</sup> أنت <sub>you (f)</sub> answer a <sup>(meh-ta)</sup> "متى" <sub>when</sub> question, say <sup>(fee)</sup> "في" <sub>at</sub> before <sup>(n-tee)</sup> أنت <sub>give the time.</sub>



- 1/1 <sup>(al-Haa-fee-la) (ta-ssee-loo) (meh-ta)</sup> متى تُصِلُ الحافلة؟ <sub>the bus arrives when</sub>  
 (at 7:00 in the morning)
- 2/2 <sup>(al-qaa-he-ra) (min) (al-Haa-fee-la) (ta-ssee-loo) (meh-ta)</sup> متى تُصِلُ الحافلة من القاهرة؟ <sub>Cairo from arrives when</sub>  
 (at 6:00 in the morning)
- 3/3 <sup>(moo-see-qee-ya) (Hahf-la) (teb-da-oo) (meh-ta)</sup> متى تبدأ حفلة موسيقية؟ <sub>the concert begins</sub>  
 (at 8:00 in the evening)
- 4/4 <sup>(al-feelm) (yeb-da-oo) (meh-ta)</sup> متى يبدأ الفيلم؟ <sub>the movie begins</sub>  
 (at 9:00 in the evening)
- 5/5 <sup>(al-ma-Tahm) (yoof-ta-Hoo) (meh-ta)</sup> متى يفتح المطعم؟ <sub>the restaurant opens</sub>  
 (at 11:00 in the morning)
- 6/6 <sup>(al-maht-Hahf) (yoof-ta-Hoo) (meh-ta)</sup> متى يفتح المتحف؟ <sub>the museum opens</sub>  
 (at 8:00 in the morning)
- 7/7 <sup>(al-maht-Hahf) (yoor-la-qoo)</sup> متى يغلق المتحف؟ <sub>the museum closes</sub>  
 (at 5:00 in the afternoon)
- 8/8 <sup>(al-bahnk) (yoor-la-qoo)</sup> متى يغلق البنك؟ <sub>closes</sub>  
 (at 6:00 in the evening)

<sup>(hoo-naa)</sup> هنا <sub>here (a)</sub> a quick quiz. Fill in the blanks <sup>(mar)</sup> مع <sub>the correct</sub> <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> الأرقام <sub>numbers</sub>.

- 9 <sup>(hoo-na-ka)</sup> هناك <sub>there are</sub> <sup>(ah-da-qee-qa) (fee) (thaa-nee-ya)</sup> ثانية في الدقيقة. <sub>seconds</sub> 11 <sup>(mar)</sup> هناك <sub>there are</sub> <sup>(oos-baq) (feel) (eye-yaam)</sup> أيام في الأسبوع. <sub>the week days</sub>
- 10 <sup>(hoo-na-ka)</sup> هناك <sub>there are</sub> <sup>(saa-ra) (fees) (da-qee-qa)</sup> دقيقة في الساعة. <sub>the hour minutes</sub> 12 <sup>(hoo-na-ka)</sup> هناك <sub>there are</sub> <sup>(seh-na) (fees) (shg-rahm)</sup> شهراً في السنة. <sub>the year months</sub>

### الأجوبة

- 1 ← في السابعة صباحاً  
 2 ← في الساعة صباحاً  
 3 ← في الثامنة مساءً  
 4 ← في التاسعة مساءً  
 5 ← في الحادية عشرة صباحاً  
 6 ← في الثامنة صباحاً  
 7 ← في الخامسة بعد الظهر  
 8 ← في الساعة مساءً  
 9 ← سِتُّون  
 10 ← سِتُّون  
 11 ← سَبْعَة  
 12 ← إِثْنَا عَشْر

أنت ← remember your greetings from earlier? It is a good time to review them as they will

always be <sup>(zhid-dahn)</sup> جداً ← important.  
why



<sup>(ma-brook) (sy-yeed) (al-hair) (sa-baaH)</sup>  
“صَبَاحُ الْخَيْرِ سَيِّدَةَ مَبْرُوكٍ.”  
Mabrook Mrs. good morning

<sup>(ah-ssa-baaH) (na-qoo-loo) (may-daa)</sup>  
ماذا نَقُولُ فِي الصَّبَاحِ؟  
do we say what

<sup>(na-qoo-loo) (may-daa)</sup>  
ماذا نَقُولُ؟  
do we say what



<sup>(may-moo-na) (mar-Ha-baa)</sup>  
“مَرْحَبًا مَيْمُونَةَ.”  
Maymoona hello

<sup>(ah-Doo-hur) (ba-da) (na-qoo-loo) (may-daa)</sup>  
ماذا نَقُولُ بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ؟  
(in) the afternoon do we say

<sup>(na-qoo-loo) (may-daa)</sup>  
ماذا نَقُولُ؟  
do we say



<sup>(weh-lead) (sy-yeed) (al-hair) (ma-saa')</sup>  
“مَسَاءُ الْخَيْرِ سَيِّدَ وَليدٍ.”  
Wehlead Mr. good evening

<sup>(ai-ma-saa') (na-qoo-loo) (may-daa)</sup>  
ماذا نَقُولُ فِي الْمَسَاءِ؟  
the evening in

<sup>(na-qoo-loo)</sup>  
ماذا نَقُولُ؟



<sup>(na-beel) (hair) (ah-la) (toos-beh-Hoo)</sup>  
“تُصَبِّحُ عَلَى خَيْرِ نَبِيلٍ.”  
Nahil good night

<sup>(ma-saa-ahn) (aa-she-ra) (feel)</sup>  
ماذا نَقُولُ فِي الْعَاشِرَةِ مَسَاءً؟  
ten

ماذا نَقُولُ؟

Just as a bonus, let's add <sup>(ta-shar-rahf-naa)</sup> تَشْرَفْنَا ← nice to meet you

If <sup>(n-tee)</sup> أنت ← are lucky enough to be visiting <sup>(roo-maan)</sup> عُمان ← or <sup>(al-koo-wqit)</sup> الْكُوَيْت ← or <sup>(al-ma-greb)</sup> الْمَغْرِب ← over a holiday or a special occasion, <sup>(n-tee)</sup> أنت ← may want to use one of the following greetings.

Congratulations! = <sup>(ma-brook)</sup> مَبْرُوك! ←  
Good Luck! = <sup>(sy-yeed) (Hajth)</sup> حَظٌ سَعِيد! ←

Happy Birthday! = <sup>(sy-yeed) (me-lahd) (reed)</sup> عِيدٌ مِيلَادٌ سَعِيد! ←  
Happy New Year! = <sup>(sy-yeed) (seh-na)</sup> سَنَةٌ سَعِيدَةٌ! ←

Here are a few holidays which you might experience during your visit!

- ☐ رَمَضان <sup>(ra-ma-Dhahn)</sup> .....
- ☐ عِيدُ الْفِطْرِ <sup>(al-fehtr) (reed)</sup> .....

(hoo-naa)

هنا the new verbs for Step 13. here are

(n-tee)

أنتِ have already used both of these,

(la-kin)

لكن it is time to but

practice them officially.

(rin-dee)

عندي I have

(oo-ree-do)

أريد I want



(dee-nga-rahN) (ha-con)

تسعون ديناراً. 90 dinars

(rin-dee)

عندي I have

(fahD-lahk) (min) (maq'aan)

ماء من فضلك. please water

(oo-ree-do)

أريد I want

(ay-yaa-ra)

سيارة. a car

(rin-da-ka)

عندك you (I) have

(ra-see-rahN)

عصيراً juice

(too-ree-do)

أريد you (I) want

(keib)

كلب. a dog

(rin-da-kee)

عندك you (I) have

(shay-yen)

شايًا tea

(too-ree-dee-na)

أريد you (I) want

(bait)

بيت. a house

(rin-da-hoo)

عنده he has

(qa-wa)

قهوة. coffee

(yoo-ree-do)

أريد he wants

(shooq-qa)

شقة. an apartment

(rin-da-haa)

عندها she has

(shoor-ba)

شوربة. soup

(too-ree-do)

أريد she wants

(ha-ree-Ta)

خريطة. a map

(rin-da-naa)

عندنا we have

(sa-la-Ta)

سلطة. salad

(noo-ree-do)

أريد we want

(kee-taab)

كتاب. a book

(rin-da-hoom)

عندهم they have

(ahk-thar)

أكثر. more

(yoo-ree-do-na)

أريدون they want

Note: There are two expressions for "to have." "عندي" is used with things. On page 61 you will be introduced to "لي" which is used with people such as "I have a friend." Not too difficult, right?

Eid Al Adha (Abraham's sacrifice) . . . . . (al-ahD-Ha)(reed) . . . . . عيد الأضحى

Eid Al Mawlid (Birth of Mohammed) . . . . . (ah-neh-ba-we)(al-mao-lid)(reed) . . . . . عيد المولد النبوي

New Years . . . . . (al-me-la-dee-ya)(ah-seh-na)(rahs) . . . . . رأس السنة الميلادية

← have learned a lot of material in the last few steps و that means it is time to quiz

yourself. Don't panic, this is just for you و no one else needs to know how أنت did. Remember, (n-tee)

is a chance to review, find out أنت ماذا remember أنت ماذا need to spend (n-tee)(may-daa) (n-tee)(may-daa)(wa)

spend time on. After أنت have finished, check your الأجوبة in the glossary at the back of (n-tee) (al-ezh-we-ba)

Circle the correct الأجوبة. هذا الكتاب (al-ezh-we-ba) (heh-daa) this book

(qa-wa) قهوة	tea	coffee
(na-ahm) نَعَمْ	yes	no
(ahm) عَمَّ	aunt	uncle
(aw) أو	and	or
(shah-ra-boo) أَشْرَبُ	I drink	I learn
(sh-asa-baaH) الصَّبَاح	morning	night
(sh-zhoo-moo-ah) الجُمُعَة	Friday	Tuesday
(sh-ta-kel-la-moo) أَتَكَلَّمُ	I speak	I understand
(bear-id) بارِد	cold	hot
(foo-loos) فُلُوس	money	page
(tis'ah) تِسْعَة	nine	ten
(hoobz) حُبْز	a lot	bread

(oos-ra) أسرة	seven	family
(zhed) جَدَّ	children	grandfather
(ra-sser) غَصِير	butter	juice
(melH) مِلْح	pepper	salt
(taH-la) تَحْت	under	over
(ra-zhool) رَجُل	man	doctor
(yoo-nee-yoo) يُونِيو	June	July
(deen) دِين	kitchen	religion
(rin-dae) عِنْدِي	I want	I have
(ah-ree-foo) أَعْرِفُ	I know	I live
(reh-dahn) غَدًا	yesterday	tomorrow
(aass-far) أَصْفَر	good	yellow

(ah-saa-ra) (kem) ← كم الساعة؟ What time is it? How are you? Well, how are you after this quiz?

\_\_\_\_\_ جَمَعَ to collect ..... (zha-ma-ahh) ..... جَمَعَ

\_\_\_\_\_ جَمَعَ university ..... (zheh-me-ah) ..... جَامِعَة

\_\_\_\_\_ جَمَعَ mosque ..... (zhaa-mehh) ..... جَامِع

الشَّمَال - الجَنُوب - الشَّرْق - الغَرَب

If <sup>(n-tee)</sup> أنتِ ← are looking at <sup>(ha-ree-Ta)</sup> خَرِيطَة ← and you see the following <sup>(ka-lee-maat)</sup> كَلِمَات, ← it should not be too difficult to figure out <sup>(may-daa)</sup> مَاذَا ← they mean. Take an educated guess. <sup>(ah-fah)</sup> أسفل. <sup>(al-esh-we-ba)</sup> الأَجْوِبَة ←



- <sup>(ahm-ree-kaa)(zha-noob)</sup> جَنُوب أَمْرِيكَا ←
- <sup>(ef-ree-qee-yaa) (zha-noob)</sup> جَنُوب إِفْرِيْقِيَا ←
- <sup>(ahm-ree-kaa)(sheh-mel)</sup> شَمَال أَمْرِيكَا ←
- <sup>(al-grer-be-ya) (ah-saH-raa')</sup> الصَّحْرَاءُ الْغَرْبِيَّةُ ←
- <sup>(ef-ree-qee-yaa) (shark)</sup> شَرْقِ إِفْرِيْقِيَا ←
- <sup>(al-ov-sahT) (ah-shark)</sup> الشَّرْقِ الْأَوْسَطِ ←

<sup>(al-ka-lee-maat) (heh-da-he)</sup> هَذِهِ الْكَلِمَات are also essential for understanding directions. Learn them <sup>(al-ann)</sup> الآن. ←

<sup>(al-greb)</sup> الغَرَب ←  
west

<sup>(eh-sheh-yuel)</sup> الشَّمَال ←  
north

<sup>(al-zha-noob)</sup> الجَنُوب ←  
south

<sup>(ah-shark)</sup> الشَّرْقِ ←  
east

<sup>(ya-ssar)</sup> يَسَار ←  
left

<sup>(tool) (ah-la)</sup> عَلى طَوَل  
straight ahead

<sup>(ya-meen)</sup> يَمِين ←  
right

الأَجْوِبَة

South America  
North America  
East Africa

South Africa  
Western Sahara  
the Middle East

These **الكلمات الجديدة** can go a long way. Say them aloud each time you write them in

the blanks below.

(fahD-lik) (min) / (fahD-lahk) (min)  
مِنْ فَضْلِكَ / مِنْ فَضْلِكَ  
please please

(shook-rahn)  
شُكْرًا  
thank you

(eh-vih-fa) / (eh-sif)  
أَسِيفٌ / أَسِيفَةٌ  
excuse me / I'm sorry / pardon

(ahf-yahn)  
عَفْوًا  
you're welcome

(koo-naa) two typical conversations for someone who is trying to find something. Write them out.  
هنا

(mar-Ha-baa) (foon-dooq) (eye-na) (fahD-lahk) (min) (na-beel)  
مِنْ فَضْلِكَ، أَيْنَ فُنْدُقٌ "مَرْكَبًا"؟  
Hello please Nabil

(ah-thaa-leeth) (ah-share-reh) (ee-la) (al-ya-saar) (ah-la) (eed-hahb) (shao-wear-id) (tha-laa-tha) (eed-hahb) (ah-med)  
أَحْمَدُ: اذْهَبِ ثَلَاثَةَ شَوَارِعَ وَ اذْهَبِ عَلَى الْيَسَارِ إِلَى الشَّارِعِ الثَّلَاثِ.  
third the street at left to go streets go Ahmed

(al-ya-meen) (ah-la) (al-foon-dooq)  
الْفُنْدُقِ عَلَى الْيَمِينِ.  
the right on

(al-ah-raam) (maht-Hahf) (eye-na) (fahD-lik) (min) (na-bee-la)  
مِنْ فَضْلِكَ، أَيْنَ مَتَكْفِ الأهرام؟  
Pyramid Museum please Nabila

(meh-trahn) (hahm-seen) (eed-ha-bee) (al-ya-meen) (eed-ha-bee) (boosh-ra)  
بُشْرَى: اذْهَبِي عَلَى الْيَمِينِ وَ اذْهَبِي خَمْسِينَ مِثْرًا.  
meters 50 to the right to go Bushra

(al-zair-we-ya) (al-maht-Hahf) (al-ya-saar) (eed-ha-bee)  
اِذْهَبِي عَلَى الْيَسَارِ وَ الْمَتَكْفِ فِي الزَّاوِيَةِ.  
the corner

جميعاً ... (zheh-me-ahn) ...

جَمَعَ

جامعي ... (zhaa-meh-ee) ...

جامعية ... (zhaa-meh-ee-ya) ...

١٥/15 الطَّابِقُ العُلوي - الطَّابِقُ السُّفلي

(ah-soo-fee) (ah-Taa-bahq) (al-rool-wee) (ah-Taa-bahq)

the downstairs the upstairs

(al-ahn) (al-baH-rain) (bait)(hoo-naa) (ah-noum) (roor-fa)

الآن let's learn more. كَلِمَاتُ الْبَحْرينِ. هُنَا بَيْتٌ فِي

we Bahrain bedroom

(al-roor-fa) (ah-noum) (roor-fa) (fee)

and look around العَرَفَةُ. Let's learn the names of the things فِي عَرَفَةُ النَّوْمِ just like

the room the bedroom

(naH-noo) (al-bait)

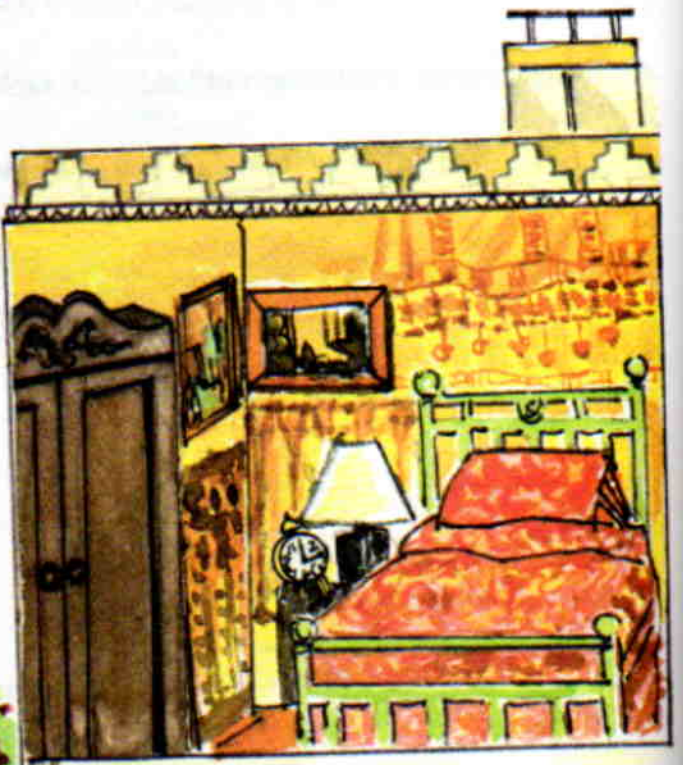
نَحْنُ learned the various parts of البَيْتِ.

we the house

(al-rool-wee) (ah-Taa-bahq) (ah-noum) (roor-fa)

الطَّابِقُ العُلوي فِي عَرَفَةُ النَّوْمِ

upstairs the bedroom (s)



(hee-zaa-na)

خَزَانَةٌ

closet, wardrobe

(sa-reer)

سَرِيرٌ

bed

(we-seh-da)

وَسَادَةٌ

pillow

(ree-Taa')

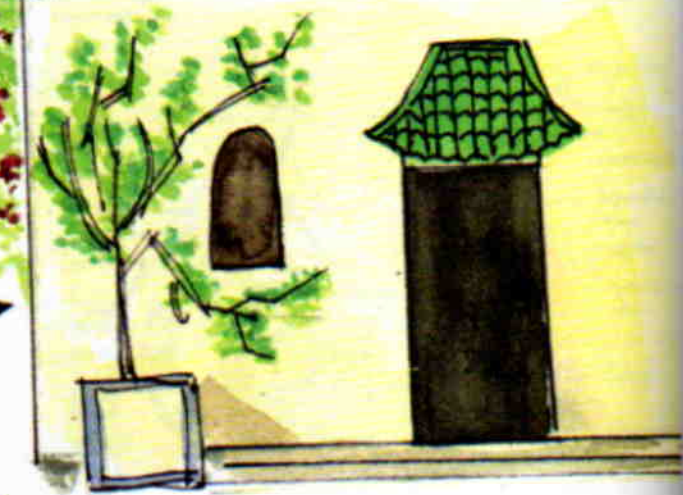
غِطَاءٌ

bed linens

(saa-ra)

سَاعَةٌ

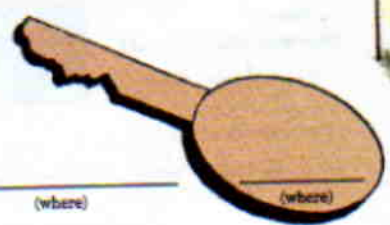
alarm clock



(ah-soo-fee) (ah-Taa-bahq) (L-zhoo-looa) (bait)

الطَّابِقُ السُّفلي فِي بَيْتِ الْجُلوسِ

downstairs the living room (s)



(ah-noum) (roor-fa)

عَرَفَةُ النَّوْمِ؟ (where)

إِسْتَمْتَعْتُ بِـ to enjoy... (be) (es-tem-ta-rahh) ..

إِسْتِمْتَاعٌ enjoyment..... (es-tem-tair) .....

مُتِمِّعٌ enjoyable ..... (moom-tair) .....

إِسْتَمْتَعْتُ بِـ



(al-ann) ← remove the next <sup>(hakm-sa)</sup>خَمْسَةَ ← stickers وَ label these <sup>(eh-zhee')</sup>أشياء ← in your <sup>(ah-noum) (roor-fa)</sup>غُرْفَةِ النَّوْمِ ← bedroom

Let's move to <sup>(wa) (al-Hahm-maam)</sup>وَ الحَمَامِ ← do the same thing. Remember, الحَمَامِ ← is generally

“the bathroom.” In a restaurant or public facility, ask for <sup>(al-meer-HaaD)</sup>“المِرْحَاضِ.” ← Restrooms are marked

<sup>(ah-nee-seh')</sup>النِّسَاءِ ← and <sup>(ah-ree-zhel)</sup>الرِّجَالِ ←



<sup>(ah-nee-seh')</sup>النِّسَاءِ



<sup>(ah-ree-zhel)</sup>الرِّجَالِ

<sup>(al-rool-woe) (ah-Taa-bahq)</sup>الحَمَامِ <sup>(eye-Dahn)</sup>أَيْضاً <sup>(al-Hahm-maam)</sup>فِي الطَّابِقِ العُلْوِيِّ ←  
the bathroom (is) also the upstairs

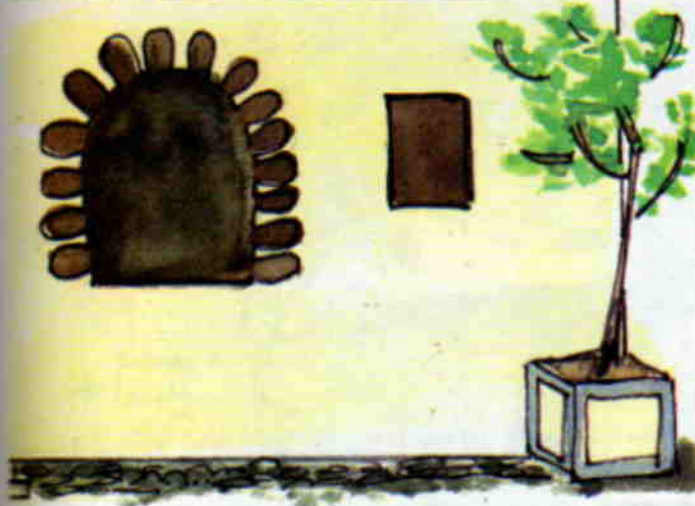
<sup>(mir-et)</sup>مِرْآة ←  
mirror

<sup>(meer-sahl)</sup>مِغْسَل ←  
sink / washstand

<sup>(foo-ahT)</sup>فُوط ←  
towels

<sup>(Hahm-maam)</sup>حَمَام ←  
bathroom / toilet

<sup>(rahsh-shair-sha)</sup>رَشَاشَةٌ ←  
shower



<sup>(ah-soo-fee) (ah-Taa-bahq)</sup>الحَكِّيبِ <sup>(eye-Dahn)</sup>أَيْضاً <sup>(al-mahk-tahb)</sup>فِي الطَّابِقِ السُّفْلِيِّ ←  
the study (is) also the downstairs

- \_\_\_\_\_ to hear ..... <sup>(sem-ee-ahh)</sup>سَمِعَ
- \_\_\_\_\_ سَمِعَ hearing ..... <sup>(ah-sem-ahh)</sup>السَّمْعَ
- \_\_\_\_\_ the listeners .. <sup>(al-moos-teh-mee-room)</sup>المُسْتَمِعُونَ

(al-eh-zheeg) (heh-da-ke)

Do not forget to remove the next group of stickers و label **هذه الأشياء** ← in your

things these

(Hahm-maam)

(hoo-naa)

Okay, it is time to review. **هنا** a quick quiz to see what you remember.

excuse me (♣)

(Tool) (ah-la) ←  
عَلَى طُول

I need

(Hahm-maam) ←  
حَمَام

the downstairs

(foo-ahT) ←  
فُوط

please (♣)

(al-rool-we) (ah-Taa-bahq) ←  
الطَّابِقُ العُلوي

towels

(ah-noum) (roor-fa) ←  
عَرَفَةُ النُّوم

the upstairs

(ah-zhee-oo) ←  
أَجِيءُ

I come

(ah-soo-fee) (ah-Taa-bahq) ←  
الطَّابِقُ السُّفلي

toilet / bathroom

(fahD-lik) (min) ←  
مِنْ فُضليكَ

straight ahead

(ee-la) (aH-teh-zhoo) ←  
أَحْتَاجُ إِلَى

the bedroom

(eh-sif) ←  
أَسِفُ



\_\_\_\_\_ to break . . . . (kes-sa-ra) . . . . كَسَرَ ←

\_\_\_\_\_ something being broken . . . (moo-kahs-sar) . . . مُكْسَر

\_\_\_\_\_ someone who breaks things . . . (moo-kes-seer) . . . مُكْسِر

Next stop — <sup>(al-mahk-tahb)</sup> المَكْتَبِ ← specifically <sup>(al-mahk-tahb)</sup> المَكْتَبِ ← in this room. <sup>(al-mahk-tahb)</sup> <sup>(fso-qa)</sup> <sup>(may-daa)</sup> ماذا <sup>(al-mahk-tahb)</sup> فوق <sup>(fso-qa)</sup> المَكْتَبِ ← ؟ <sup>(may-daa)</sup> ماذا

Let's identify <sup>(al-ah-zhee')</sup> الأشياء ← that one normally finds on <sup>(al-mahk-tahb)</sup> المَكْتَبِ ← or strewn about <sup>(al-bait)</sup> البيت ←.

<sup>(Teh-baa-ra)</sup> <sup>(aa-lit)</sup> آلة طباعة ←  
printer

<sup>(qa-lahm)</sup> قلم ←  
pen / pencil

<sup>(teh-lee-fiz-owen)</sup> تليفزيون ←  
television

<sup>(kohm-boo-tair)</sup> كمبيوتر ←  
computer

<sup>(wa-ra-qa)</sup> ورقة ←  
paper



<sup>(naTh-Thaa-ra)</sup> نظارة ←  
eyeglasses

<sup>(meh-zhel-la)</sup> مجلة ←  
magazine

<sup>(ssa-He-fa)</sup> <sup>(zha-ree-da)</sup> جريدة / صحيفة ←  
newspaper

<sup>(sahl-la)</sup> سلة ←  
wastepaper basket

<sup>(kee-laab)</sup> كتاب ←  
book

كسَّرَ

broken ..... <sup>(mahk-soor)</sup> ..... مكسور

breaking ..... <sup>(tahk-seer)</sup> ..... تكسير

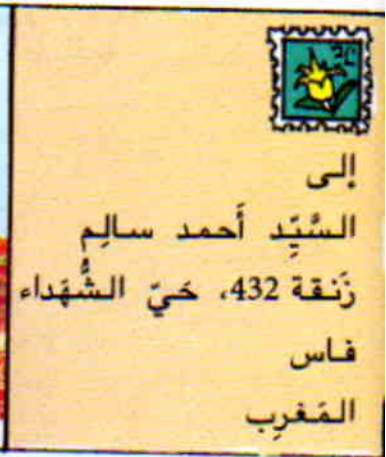
kasra (vowel underneath) ..... <sup>(kes-ra)</sup> ..... كسرة

Don't forget these essentials!

(ree-saa-la) رسالة letter

(Taa-bahh) طابع stamp

(be-Taa-qa) بطاقة postcard



(letter)

(stamp)

(postcard)

The word "جَوّ" (zhao) is also found in "بالبريد الجوي" (al-zhao-we) (bil-ba-reed) Note above that "إلى السيد" (sy-yed) (ee-la) and "إلى السيدة" (sy-yeh-da) (ee-la) are used when addressing letters بالعربيّة (bil-r-ra-be-ya) in Arabic.

(al-ann) الان label these things in (al-mahk-tahb) المكتب with your stickers. Do not forget to say هَذِهِ (heh-da-he) these (al-ka-lee-maat) الكلمات out loud whenever (n-ta) أنت write them, (n-ta) أنت see them و أنت apply the stickers

The word لا (la) is extremely useful بالعربيّة (bil-r-ra-be-ya). Add لا (la) before most verbs و you negate the sentence.

(ree-saa-la) (oor-see-loo) (la) لا أُرْسِلُ رسالة. (a) letter I send not

(ree-saa-la) (oor-see-loo) لا أُرْسِلُ رسالة. (a) letter I send

Simple, isn't it? (al-ann) الان, after you fill in the blanks on the next page, go back a second time

تَكَلَّمَ (ta-kel-la-ma) to speak .....  
 مُتَكَلِّم (moo-ta-kel-lim) speaker (♂) .....  
 مُتَكَلِّمَة (moo-ta-kel-lee-ma) speaker (♀) .....

(la) لا no/not

and negate all these sentences by adding لا before each verb. Practice saying these sentences

out loud many times. Don't get discouraged! Just look at كم ← you have already learned و

think ahead to البحر ← at عقبة ← or sightseeing in القاهرة و مراكش ←

(al-ba-Har) the sea	(ah-qa-ba) Aqaba	(ah-tee-lag) أتصل I phone	(ah-be-roo) أبيع I sell
(ah-naa-moo) أنام I sleep			

(al-foon-dooq) بالفندق the hotel	(ah-tee-lag) أتصل I phone	(ahkt) أخت (a) sister	(lee) لي I have
(bil-ma-Tahm) بالمطعم the restaurant	(ahkt) أتصل you (\$) phone	(ah-k) أخ (a) brother	(la-ka) لك you (\$) have
(bil-bait) بالبيت the house	(ahkt) أتصل you (\$) phone	(ibn) ابن (a) son	(la-bee) لك you (\$) have
(bi-Tahn-sha) بطنجة (a) Tangier	(yah-tee-lag) يتصل he phone	(bint) بنت (a) daughter	(la-hoo) لها she has
(bi-ahm-maan) بعثان (a) Amman	(ahkt) أتصل she phone	(saa-deeq) صديق (a) friend	(la-haa) لها she has
(bi-ka-na-daa) بكندا	(nah-tee-lag) نتصل we phone	(ka-beer-ah) عائلة كبيرة large family	(la-naa) لنا we have
(bi-ahm-ree-kaa) بأمریکا the U.S.A.	(yah-tee-lag) يتصلون they phone	(saa-greer-ah) عائلة صغيرة small family	(la-hoom) لهم they have

(ah-noum) (room-fa) (fee) في غرفة النوم the bedroom	(ah-naa-moo) أنام I sleep	(ah-Tao-waa-bjakh) الطوابع stamps	(ah-be-roo) أبيع I sell
(ah-noum) (room-fa) في غرفة النوم	(ta-naa-moo) تنام you (\$) sleep / she sleeps	(al-sha-rair-id) الجرائد newspapers	(ta-be-roo) تبيع you (\$) sell / she sells
(ah-aa-reer) (fao-qa) فوق السرير the bed on	(ta-naa-me-na) تنامين you (\$) sleep	(al-be-Taa-qaat) البطاقات postcards	(ta-be-ree-na) تبيعين you (\$) sell
(ah-aa-reer) (fao-qa) فوق السرير	(ya-naa-moo) ينام he sleeps	(al-koo-toob) الكتب books	(ya-be-roo) يبيع he sells
(al-foon-dooq) في الفندق	(na-naa-moo) ننام we sleep	(ah-zoo-hoor) الزهور flowers	(na-be-roo) نبيع we sell
(ah-Doo-yooq) (saa-lakt) في صالة الضيوف guesthouse	(ya-naa-moo-na) ينامون they sleep		(ya-be-roo-na) يبيعون they sell

تكلّم speaking ..... (keh-lahm) ..... كلام ←

تكلّم word ..... (ka-lee-ma) ..... كلمة ←

تكلّم words ..... (ka-lee-maat) ..... كلمات ←

Before (n-lee) proceed (mar) the next step (fahD-lik) (min) ← identify all the items (ahs-fahl) ←  
 أنتِ مع من فضلك أسفل.  
 (4) please below

(zha-ree-da) ← جريدة  
 (Taa-bahh) ← طابع  
 (sahl-la) ← سلة  
 (be-Taa-qa) ← بطاقة  
 (kee-taab) ← كتاب  
 (wa-ra-qa) ← ورقة  
 (qa-lahm) ← قلم  
 (Teh-baa-ra) (aa-lit) ← آلة طباعة  
 (ree-saa-la) ← رسالة  
 (naTh-Thaa-ya) ← نظارة  
 (meh-zhel-la) ← مجلة  
 (teh-lee-fiz-owen) ← تليفزيون  
 (kohm-boo-tair) ← كمبيوتر

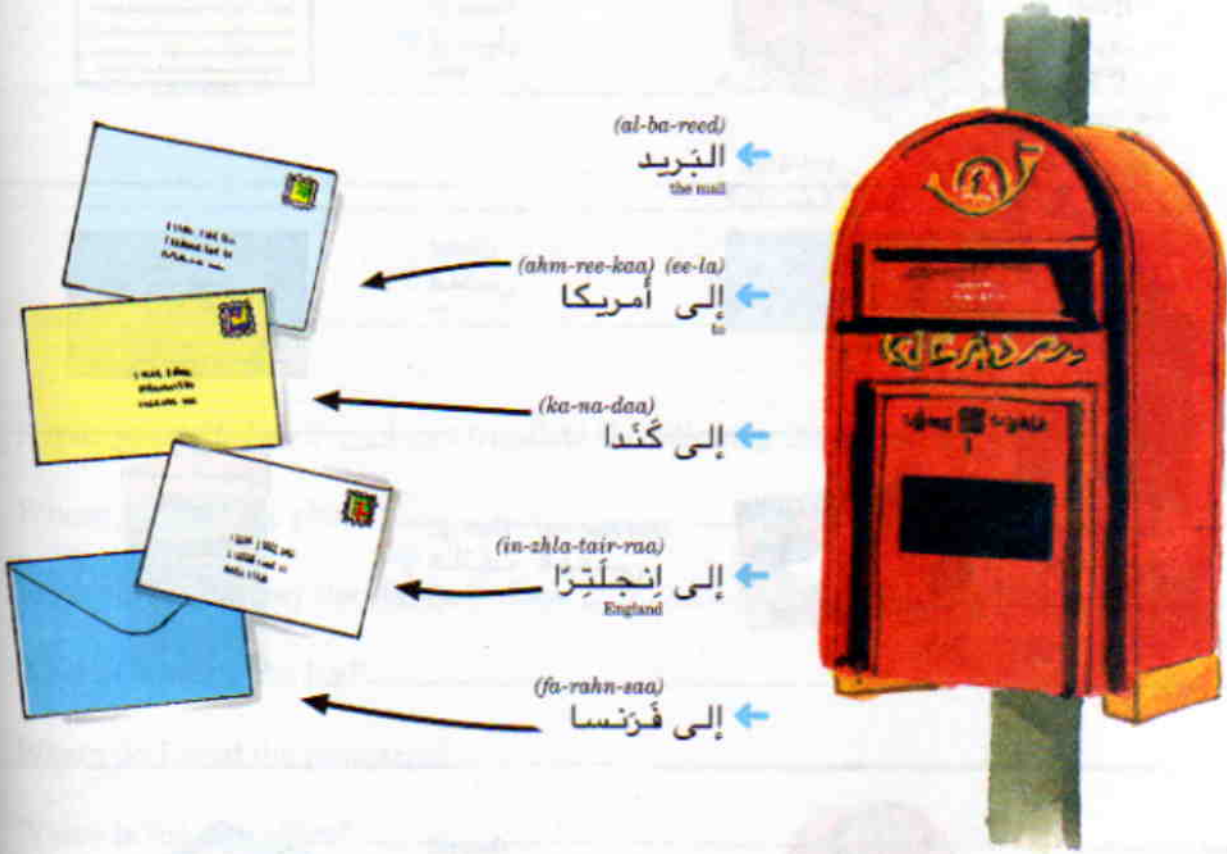
The following are closely related even if not all in the same family.

\_\_\_\_\_ to mail / send ..... (air-sa-la) ..... أرسل ←

\_\_\_\_\_ البريد ..... (al-ba-reed) .....

\_\_\_\_\_ mailman .. (al-ba-reed)(seh-ree) .. ساعي البريد ..

(n-ta) know **أَنْتَ** (al-ann) **الآن** how to count, (kay-fa) **كَيْفَ** to ask (es-ee-la) **أَسْئَلَةَ** how to use verbs with the "plug-in"  
 (kay-fa) formula, **كَيْفَ** to make statements **وَ** how to describe something, be it the location of (foon-dooq) **فَنْدُقَ**  
 (a) hotel or the color of (bait) **بَيْتِ**. Let's now take the basics that (n-ta) **أَنْتَ** have learned **وَ** expand them in  
 (may-daa) special areas that will be most helpful in your travels. **مَاذَا** does everyone do on a holiday?  
 (be-Taa-qaat) Send **بِطَاقَاتٍ** of course! Let's learn exactly (al-ba-reed) **الْبَرِيدِ** (mahk-tahb) (kay-fa) **كَيْفَ** works.  
 postcards the post office how



(al-ba-reed) (mahk-tahb) **مَكْتَبَ الْبَرِيدِ** has everything. (al-ba-reed) (mahk-tahb) **مَكْتَبَ الْبَرِيدِ** is where (Taa-bahh) **أَنْتَ** need to go to buy a **طَابَعٍ**  
 the post office the post office stamp  
 (be-Taa-qaat) (reh-saa-il) (al-ba-reed) (mahk-tahb) mail a package, and send **بِطَاقَاتٍ وَ رَسَائِلَ**. **مَكْتَبَ الْبَرِيدِ** is generally open, but not  
 (ssa-baa-Hahn) (ah-nessf) (ah-thaa-me-ya) (ma-saa-ahn) (ah-nessf) (ah-saa-dee-sa) always, from **السَّابِيسَةِ وَ النِّصْفِ صَبَاحًا** until **الثَّامِنَةَ وَ النِّصْفِ مَسَاءً**  
 half eight six

Sunday through Thursday in some countries and from Monday to Friday in other countries.

- صندوق البريد (al-ba-reed)(ssoon-dooq)
  - مَكْتَبَ الْبَرِيدِ (al-ba-reed)(mahk-tahb)
  - البريد الإلكتروني (al-eh-lek-troo-nee)(al-ba-reed)
- أرسل \_\_\_\_\_

(hoo-naa) (ka-lee-maat) (al-ba-reed) (mahk-tahb) Practice them aloud و write  
 هنا ← the necessary كَلِمَات for البريد مَكْتَب the post office

(al-ka-lee-maat) (ahs-fahl) أسفل  
 الكَلِمَات in the blanks below

(ree-saa-la) رسالة  
 letter



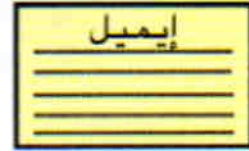
(be-Taa-qa) بطاقة  
 postcard



(Tard) طرد  
 package



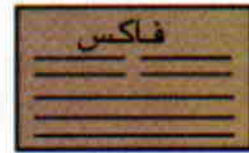
(ee-mail) إيْمِيل  
 email



(al-zhao-we) (bil-ba-reed) بالبريد الجوّي  
 by airmail



(faaks) فاكس  
 fax



(Taa-bahh) طابع  
 stamp



(roo-moo-me) (haa-tif) هاتف عُمومي  
 public phone / booth



(al-ba-reed) (ssoon-dooq) صندوق البريد  
 mailbox



(haa-tif) هاتف  
 telephone



(teh-lee-foon) تَلِفون  
 telephone

\_\_\_\_\_ letter / message ..... (ree-saa-la) ..... رسالة ← □  
 \_\_\_\_\_ أرسَل the messenger ..... (ah-ra-sool) ..... الرُّسول □  
 \_\_\_\_\_ by airmail .. (al-zhao-we) (bil-ba-reed) .. بالبريد الجوّي □



Next step — <sup>(n-ta)</sup> أنت ask <sup>(es-ee-la)</sup> أسئلة ← like those <sup>(ahs-fahl)</sup> أسفل, depending on what <sup>(too-ree-do)</sup> تريد. ← Repeat these  
(t) questions below you (t) want

sentences aloud many times.

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(fahD-lahk)</sup> مِنْ أَيْنَ <sup>(ah-Tao-waa-bihh)</sup> أَشْتَرِي <sup>(esh-ta-ree)</sup> الطُّوابعِ <sup>(eye-na)</sup> مِنْ <sup>(min)</sup> أَيْنَ؟  
(t) stamps do I buy where from

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(fahD-lahk)</sup> مِنْ أَيْنَ <sup>(al-be-Taa-qaat)</sup> أَشْتَرِي <sup>(esh-ta-ree)</sup> البِطَاقَاتِ <sup>(eye-na)</sup> مِنْ <sup>(min)</sup> أَيْنَ؟  
(t) postcards do I buy

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(ah-teh-lee-foon)</sup> أَيْنَ <sup>(eye-na)</sup> التِّلْفُونِ مِنْ أَيْنَ؟  
(t) the telephone

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(fahD-lik)</sup> أَيْنَ <sup>(al-ba-reed)</sup> صُنْدُوقِ <sup>(ssoon-dooq)</sup> البَرِيدِ مِنْ أَيْنَ؟  
(t) the mailbox

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(fahD-lik)</sup> أَيْنَ <sup>(al-roo-moo-me)</sup> الهَاتِفِ <sup>(al-haa-tif)</sup> العُموميِّ مِنْ أَيْنَ؟  
(t) the public phone

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(fahD-lik)</sup> أَيْنَ <sup>(al-be-Taa-qaat)</sup> أُرْسِلُ <sup>(oor-see-loo)</sup> البِطَاقَاتِ مِنْ أَيْنَ؟  
(t) the postcards do I send

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(al-faaks)</sup> أَيْنَ <sup>(oor-see-loo)</sup> أُرْسِلُ <sup>(eye-na)</sup> الفاكسِ مِنْ أَيْنَ؟  
(t) the fax

<sup>(al-ann)</sup> الآنَ quiz yourself. See if <sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> أنت can translate the following thoughts <sup>(ee-ia)</sup> إلى الغريبةِ ←  
(t) into

1. Where is the public phone? \_\_\_\_\_
2. From where do I buy the stamps? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Where do I send the fax? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Where do I send the postcards? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Where is the post office? \_\_\_\_\_
6. From where do I buy the postcards? \_\_\_\_\_
7. By airmail? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Where do I send the package? \_\_\_\_\_

**الأجوبة**

٥ ← أَيْنَ مَكْتَبِ البَرِيدِ؟	١ ← أَيْنَ الهَاتِفِ العُموميِّ؟
٦ مِنْ أَيْنَ أَشْتَرِي البِطَاقَاتِ؟	٢ مِنْ أَيْنَ أَشْتَرِي الطُّوابعِ؟
٧ بِالبَرِيدِ الجَوِّيِّ؟	٣ أَيْنَ أُرْسِلُ الفاكسِ؟
٨ أَيْنَ أُرْسِلُ الطَّرْدِ؟	٤ أَيْنَ أُرْسِلُ البِطَاقَاتِ؟

هنا more verbs.

(ah-Tea-nee) ← أعطيني  
give me

(theh-men) (ahd-fa-roo) ← أَدْفَعُ ثَمَنَ ...  
the price of / for I pay

(ahk-too-boo) ← أَكْتُبُ  
I write

(ahq-rr-oo) ← أَقْرَأُ  
I read

Practice these verbs by not only filling in the blanks, but by saying them aloud many, many times until you are comfortable <sup>(mar)</sup> مَعَ the sounds وَ the words.

(fahD-lik) (min) (al-qa-lahm) أعطيني القلم من فضلك. (ah-Tea-nee) give me the pen (f) please

(al-qa-lahm) أعطيني القلم من فضلك. (ah-Tea-nee) give me the pencil (f)

(teih-kee-ra) أعطيني تذكرة من فضلك. (ah-Tea-nee) give me (a) ticket (f)

(fahD-lahk) (ah-Taa-bahh) أعطيني الطابع من فضلك. (ah-Tea-nee) give me the stamp (f)

(al-mif-tair) أعطيني المفتاح من فضلك. (ah-Tea-nee) give me the key (f)

(al-seam) أعطيني الاسم من فضلك. (ah-Tea-nee) give me the name (f)

(ah-ree-saa-la) الرِّسالة. (ahk-too-boo) I write the letter

(ah-ree-saa-la) تَكْتُبُ الرِّسالة. (tahk-too-boo) you (f) write / she writes

(al-kee-taab) الكِتَاب. (tahk-too-be-na) تَكْتُبِينَ the book you (f) write

(al-roon-ween) العُنْوَان. (yahk-too-boo) يَكْتُبُ the address he writes

(al-eesm) الإِسْم. (nahk-too-boo) نَكْتُبُ the name we write

(al-faaks) الفاكس. (yahk-too-boo-na) يَكْتُبُونَ the fax they write

(al-foon-dooq) أَدْفَعُ ثَمَنَ الفُنْدُقِ. (theh-men) (ahd-fa-roo) I pay for the hotel

(al-foon-dooq) تُدْفَعُ ثَمَنَ الفُنْدُقِ. (theh-men) (tahd-fa-roo) you (f) pay / she pays

(ah-taak-see) تُدْفَعِينَ الثَّانِكْسِي. (theh-men) (tahd-fa-ree-na) you (f) pay the taxi

(al-Haa-fee-la) يَدْفَعُ ثَمَنَ الحافِلةِ. (theh-men) (yahd-fa-roo) he pays the bus

(ah-teth-kee-ra) نُدْفَعُ ثَمَنَ التَّذْكَرَةِ. (nahd-fa-roo) we pay the ticket

(al-ma-Tahm) يَدْفَعُونَ ثَمَنَ المَطْعَمِ. (yahd-fa-roo-na) they pay the restaurant

(al-kee-taab) أَقْرَأُ الكِتَابَ. (ahq-rr-oo) I read the book

(al-meh-zhel-la) تَقْرَأُ المَجَلَّةَ. (tahq-rr-oo) you (f) read / she reads the magazine

(al-meh-zhel-la) تَقْرَأِينَ المَجَلَّةَ. (tahq-rr-aye-na) you (f) read

(al-zha-ree-da) يَقْرَأُ الجَرِيدَةَ. (yahq-rr-oo) he reads the newspaper

(ka-thee-rahm) نَقْرَأُ كَثِيرًا. (nahq-rr-oo) we read a lot

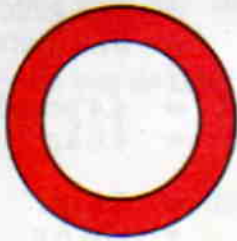
(qa-leg-lahn) يَقْرَأُونَ قَلِيلًا. (yahq-rr-oo-na) they read a little

\_\_\_\_\_ رَحَلَ to move ..... (ra-Ha-la) .....

\_\_\_\_\_ رَحَالَةً explorer ..... (raH-Haa-la) .....

\_\_\_\_\_ رَحْلَةً exploration / journey / excursion ..... (reH-la) .....

Some of these signs you probably recognize, but take a couple of minutes to review them anyway.



road closed to vehicles

(lee-yy-yaa-raat) (moog-lahq) (ah-Ta-reeq)

الطَّرِيقُ مُغْلَقٌ لِلسَّيَّارَاتِ



customs

(al-zha-mair-ik)

الْجَمَارِكِ



no entrance

(mem-noo') (ah-dook-hool)

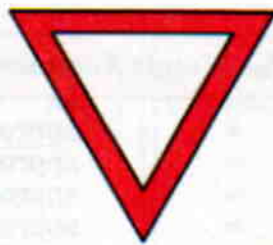
الدُّخُولُ مَمْنُوعٌ



main road

(ra-ee-see-ya) (Ta-reeq)

طَرِيقٌ رَأْسِيَّةٌ



yield

(ah-soo-ra) (me-na) (hahf-fif)

حُفِّفْ مِنْ السَّرْعَةِ



speed limit

(meH-doo-da) (soo-ra)

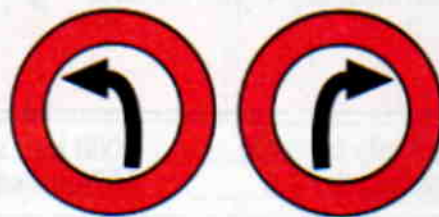
سُرْعَةٌ مَحْدُودَةٌ



no parking / no stopping

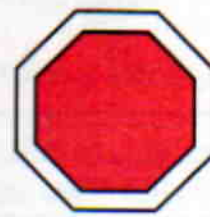
(mem-noo') (al-woo-goof)

الْوُقُوفُ مَمْنُوعٌ



(al-ya-saar) (ee-la) (al-ya-meen) (ee-la)

إِلَى الْيَمِينِ / إِلَى الْيَسَارِ  
to the right to the left



stop

(qef)

قِفْ

(mes-dood) (Ta-reeq)  
 ← طَرِيقٌ مَسْدُودٌ  
dead end



What follows are approximate conversions, so when you order something by liters, kilograms or grams you will have an idea of what to expect and not find yourself being handed one piece of candy when you thought you ordered an entire bag.

To Convert		Do the Math	
liters (l) to gallons, gallons to liters,	multiply by 0.26 multiply by 3.79	4 liters x 0.26 = 1.04 gallons 10 gal. x 3.79 = 37.9 liters	
kilograms (kg) to pounds, pounds to kilos,	multiply by 2.2 multiply by 0.46	2 kilograms x 2.2 = 4.4 pounds 10 pounds x 0.46 = 4.6 kg	
grams (g) to ounces, ounces to grams,	multiply by 0.035 multiply by 28.35	100 grams x 0.035 = 3.5 oz. 10 oz. x 28.35 = 283.5 g.	
meters (m) to feet, feet to meters,	multiply by 3.28 multiply by 0.3	2 meters x 3.28 = 6.56 feet 6 feet x 0.3 = 1.8 meters	

For fun, take your weight in pounds and convert it into kilograms. It sounds better that way, doesn't it? How many kilometers is it from your home to school, to work, to the post office?

The Simple Versions	
one liter	= approximately one US quart
four liters	= approximately one US gallon
one kilo	= approximately 2.2 pounds
100 grams	= approximately 3.5 ounces
500 grams	= slightly more than one pound
one meter	= slightly more than three feet

The distance between <sup>(deh-mahshk)</sup> دِمَشق <sup>(ahm-maan)</sup> و عَمَّان ← is approximately 110 miles. How many kilometers would that be? The distance between <sup>(ah-ree-baaT)</sup> الرِّبَاط <sup>(al-qaa-he-ra)</sup> و القَاهِرَة ← is 3,595 kilometers. How many miles is that?

kilometers (km.) to miles, miles to kilometers,	multiply by 0.62 multiply by 1.6	1000 km. x 0.62 = 620 miles 1000 miles x 1.6 = 1,600 km.
--	-------------------------------------	---

Inches	1	2	3	4	5	6	7											
To convert centimeters into inches, multiply by 0.39 Example: 9 cm. x 0.39 = 3.51 in.																		
To convert inches into centimeters, multiply by 2.54 Example: 4 in. x 2.54 = 10.16 cm.																		
cm	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18

*(al-Heh-saab)* *(ahd-fa-roo)* *(kay-fa)*  
**كَيْفَ أَدْفَعُ الْحِسَابَ**  
the bill to pay how

*(Heh-saa-baat)* *(hoo-na-ka)* *(na-ahm)* *(ow)* *(ah-sau-dee-ya)* *(al-r-ra-be-ya)* *(al-zeh-zair-ir)*  
**حِسَابَاتُ هُنَاكَ نَعَمْ، to pay فِي الْجَزَائِرِ وَ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ السُّعُودِيَّةِ أَوْ**  
bills there are yes or Saudi Arabia Algeria  
 your travels take you. You have just finished your delicious **وَ عِشَاءً** *(ay-shaa')* *(al-Heh-saab)*  
**الْحِسَابَ.** *(al-Heh-saab)*  
the bill

*(kay-fa)* *(n-ta)* *(sy-yed)* *(yaa)* *(sy-yeh-da)* *(yaa)*  
**كَيْفَ** *(kay-fa)* do you do this? **أَنْتَ** *(n-ta)* call: **يَا سَيِّدَ** *(sy-yed)* *(yaa)* or **يَا سَيِّدَةَ** *(sy-yeh-da)* *(yaa)*  
how waiter (oh) waitress (oh)

*(al-Heh-saab)* *(oo-ree-do)* *(sy-yed)* *(yaa)*  
**يَا سَيِّدَ، أُرِيدُ الْحِسَابَ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.**  
waiter (oh) I want the bill

The waiter will normally reel off what *(n-ta)* **أَنْتَ** *(n-ta)* have eaten, while writing rapidly. *(hoo-wa)* **هُوَ** *(hoo-wa)* will then  
 place a piece of paper on *(ah-Taa-wq-la)* **الطَّائِلَةَ** *(ah-Taa-wq-la)* *(dee-nqa-rahm)* *(tha-laa-thoon)* **“ثَلَاثُونَ دِينَارًا مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.”**  
the table dinars 30  
*(n-ta)* **أَنْتَ** *(n-ta)* will pay the waiter or perhaps *(ah-seoon-dooq)* **الصُّنْدُوقَ** *(ah-seoon-dooq)*  
the cashier



Remember, the service may be included in *(al-Heh-saab)* **الْحِسَابَ** *(al-Heh-saab)* *(soo-ree-yaa)* **عندما تَدِينُ فِي سُورِيَا** *(soo-ree-yaa)*  
the bill Syria  
*(al-zeh-zair-ir)* **عندما تَدِينُ فِي الْجَزَائِرِ** *(al-zeh-zair-ir)* always make a reservation. It can be very difficult to get into a popular  
*(ma-Tahm)* **مَطْعَمًا** *(ma-Tahm)* Remember, *(r-ra-be-ya)* **أَنْتَ** *(r-ra-be-ya)* know enough **عَرَبِيَّةً** *(r-ra-be-ya)* to make a reservation! Just speak slowly  
restaurant Arabic  
 and clearly.

*(yaa)* **Tip:** “يا” is a friendly way to catch another’s attention or to signal that you are speaking to  
*(sy-yed)* *(yaa)* that person as in “يا سَيِّدَ” above.

Remember these key <sup>(ka-lee-maat)</sup> **كَلِمَات** ← when dining out <sup>(bil-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> **بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ** ←  
In Arabic

<sup>(sy-yed) (yaa)</sup> <b>يَا سَيِّد</b> ← <small>waiter (oh)</small>	<sup>(sy-yeh-da) (yaa)</sup> <b>يَا سَيِّدَة</b> ← <small>waitress (oh)</small>
<sup>(Heh-saab)</sup> <b>حِسَاب</b> ← <small>bill</small>	<sup>(ahf-yeahn)</sup> <b>عَفْوًا عَفْوًا عَفْوًا</b> ← <small>you're welcome</small>
<sup>(L-ah-kei) (la-ee-Ha)</sup> <b>لَايْحَة الْأَكْل</b> ← <small>the menu</small>	<sup>(al-hid-ma) (roo-soom)</sup> <b>رُسُوم الخِدْمَة</b> ← <small>service charge</small>
<sup>(mar-dee-ra)</sup> <b>مَعْذِرَة</b> ← <small>excuse me</small>	<sup>(zha-zee-lahn) (shook-rahn)</sup> <b>شُكْرًا جَزِيْلًا</b> ← <small>thank you very much</small>
<sup>(fahD-lik) (min) (fahD-lahk) (min)</sup> <b>مِنْ فَضْلِكَ / مِنْ فَضْلِكِ</b> ← <small>(f) (f) please (f)</small>	<sup>(ah-wo-ssil)</sup> <b>الْوَصْل</b> ← <small>receipt</small>

<sup>(hoo-wo) (heh-daa)</sup> **هَذَا هُوَ** ← a sample exchange about paying <sup>(al-Heh-saab)</sup> **الحِسَاب**. ← Practice by writing it in the blanks.  
It (is) this the bill

<sup>(al-Heh-saab) (ahd-fu-ra) (ahn) (oo-ree-do) (zha-leei)</sup>  
**جَلِيْلٌ : أُرِيدُ أَنْ أُنْفِقَ الحِسَابَ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.**  
Zhalil I want pay the bill (f)

---

<sup>(roor-fa) (eye-yoo) (al-bao-weeb)</sup>  
**البَوَّابُ : أَيُّ عُرْفَة مِنْ فَضْلِكَ؟**  
clerk which room

---

<sup>(tha-laa-thoo-ma-ya) (roor-fa) (zha-leei)</sup>  
**جَلِيْلٌ : عُرْفَة ثَلَاثِيْنَة وَ عَشْرَة.**  
300 ten

---

<sup>(zha-zee-lahn) (ah-wo-ssil) (hoo-wo) (haa) (laH-Dha) (al-bao-weeb)</sup>  
**البَوَّابُ : لَحْظَة مِنْ فَضْلِكَ. هَا هُوَ الوَصْل. شُكْرًا جَزِيْلًا.**  
just a minute the receipt It (is) here

If <sup>(al-Heh-saab)</sup> **الحِسَاب**, just ask someone to write out <sup>(al-aar-qaam)</sup> **الأَرْقَام**, so that  
 أنت can be sure you understand everything correctly,

<sup>(shook-rahn) (al-aar-qaam) (eek-toob) (fahD-lahk)</sup>  
 ← **مِنْ فَضْلِكَ، اِكْتُبِ الأَرْقَامَ. شُكْرًا.**  
write out the numbers

Practice: \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Please write out the numbers. Thank you.)

_____	to know / learn / find out	..... (ah-lee-ma)	..... <b>عَلِمَ</b>
_____	<b>عَلِمَ</b>	scholar (♂) .....	(aa-lim) ..... <b>عَالِمٌ</b>
_____		scholar (♀) .....	(aa-lee-ma) ..... <b>عَالِمَة</b>

Let's take a break from <sup>(al-foo-loos)</sup> الفلوس و learn some fun <sup>(zha-dee-da) (ka-lee-maat)</sup> كَلِمَات جَدِيدَة. You can always

practice <sup>(al-ka-lee-maat) (heh-da-he)</sup> الكَلِمَات هَذِهِ <sup>money</sup> by using your flash cards at the back of <sup>(al-kee-taab) (heh-daa)</sup> هَذَا <sup>this</sup> الكتاب. Carry

these flash cards in your purse, pocket, briefcase <sup>(ow)</sup> أو knapsack و use them!



<sup>(saeH-He)</sup> صحي ←  
healthy



<sup>(ma-reeD)</sup> مريض ←  
sick



<sup>(zhy-yed)</sup> جيد ←  
good



<sup>(Dy-ef)</sup> ضعيف ← / <sup>(sy-yeh')</sup> سيء ←  
bad (grades) / bad



<sup>(saak-hin)</sup> ساخن ← / <sup>(Har)</sup> حار ←  
hot (food) / hot (weather)



<sup>(bear-id)</sup> بارد ←  
cold

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ عِلْم knowledge ..... (ah-eh-lem) ..... العلم ←

\_\_\_\_\_ عَالَم world ..... (ah-aa-lahm) ..... عالم ←

\_\_\_\_\_ عَلَم flag ..... (ah-lahm) ..... علم ←

(qa-aseer)  
قَصِير  
short

(Ta-weel)  
طَوِيل  
long



(ba-Te'e)  
بَاطِيء  
slow

(sa-reer)  
سَرِيع  
fast



(Ta-weel)  
طَوِيل  
tall

(qa-aseer)  
قَصِير  
short

(ka-beer)  
كَبِير  
old

(asa-green)  
صَغِير  
young



(rah-lee) (tha-meen)  
عَالِي / ثَمِين  
expensive

(ra-keem)  
رَخِيص  
cheap

(rah-nee)  
عَنِي  
rich

(fa-qeer)  
فَقِير  
poor

(ka-thge-rahn)  
كَثِيرًا  
a lot

(shway-yeh) (qa-leg-lahn)  
شَوِي / قَلِيلًا  
a little

instructor (♂) ..... (moo-ahl-lim) ..... مُعَلِّم

عَلِمَ

instructor (♀) ... (moo-ahl-lee-ma) ..... مُعَلِّمَة

landmark ..... (ma-aa-lim) ..... مَعْلَم



(hoo-naa)

(ahn) (yeh-zhee-boo)

هنا some new verbs. You can translate **أَنْ** ← **يَجِبُ** here simply as "I must." The

second verb in the sentence needs to follow your pattern as you'll see in the examples below.

(ah-qop-loo)

أَقُولُ ←  
I say

(ahb-qa)

أَبْقَى ←  
I stay

(ahn) (yeh-zhee-boo)

أَنْ ← **يَجِبُ**  
it must be / I must

(ahn) (ahs-ta-Tee-roo)

أَنْ ← **أَسْتَطِيعُ**  
I can / am able to

The word "أَنْ" functions as a connector. You can translate it as "to" or "that" or sometimes a translation isn't even necessary.

(ka-lhee-rahn) **كثيراً** \_\_\_\_\_  
a lot

(ah-qop-loo) **أَقُولُ** ←  
I say

(al-Heh-saab) (ahd-fa-ra) **أدفع الحساب** \_\_\_\_\_  
the bill (I) pay

(ahn) (yeh-zhee-boo) **أَنْ** ← **يَجِبُ**  
it must be / I must

(ka-lhee-rahn) **كثيراً** \_\_\_\_\_

(ta-qop-loo) **تَقُولُ** \_\_\_\_\_  
you (♀) say / she says

(al-qaa-ha-ra) (ee-la) (oo-sah-fee-ra) **أسافر إلى القاهرة** \_\_\_\_\_  
Cairo (I) travel

(ahn) (yeh-zhee-boo) **أَنْ** ← **يَجِبُ**  
I must

(qa-lag-lahn) **قليلاً** \_\_\_\_\_  
a little

(ta-qoo-lee-na) **تَقُولِينَ** \_\_\_\_\_  
you (♀) say

(al-ann) (aa-koo-la) **أكل الآن** \_\_\_\_\_  
eat

(yeh-zhee-boo) **أَنْ** ← **يَجِبُ**  
I must

(shay) (eye) **أي شيء** \_\_\_\_\_  
nothing

(ya-qoo-loo) (la) **لا يقول** \_\_\_\_\_  
he says

(al-mahd-Hahf) (ah-ra) **أرى المتحف** \_\_\_\_\_  
the museum see

(yeh-zhee-boo) **أَنْ** ← **يَجِبُ**

(la) **"لا"** \_\_\_\_\_  
no

(na-qoo-loo) **نقول** \_\_\_\_\_  
we say

(al-qa-sa) (ahh-ra-ba) **أشرب القهوة** \_\_\_\_\_  
drink

(yeh-zhee-boo) **أَنْ** ← **يَجِبُ**

(na-ahn) **"نعم"** \_\_\_\_\_  
yes

(ya-qoo-loo-na) **يقولون** \_\_\_\_\_  
they say

(al-ah-raam) (ah-ra) **أرى الأهرام** \_\_\_\_\_  
the Pyramids see

(yeh-zhee-boo) **أَنْ** ← **يَجِبُ**

(al-foon-dooq) (fee) **في الفندق** \_\_\_\_\_  
the hotel in

(ahb-qa) **أَبْقَى** ←  
I stay

(al-r-ra-be-ya) (ah-ta-kel-lq-ma) **أتكلم العربية** \_\_\_\_\_  
Arabic speak

(ahn) (ahs-ta-Tee-roo) **أَنْ** ← **أَسْتَطِيعُ**  
I can / am able to

(ah-Doq-yoof) (esaa-laht) **في صالة الضيوف** \_\_\_\_\_  
the guesthouse

(tahb-qa) **تَبْقَى** \_\_\_\_\_  
you (♀) stay / she stays

(ta-ta-kel-lq-ma) **تتكلم العربية** \_\_\_\_\_  
speak

(ahn) (tahs-ta-Tee-roo) **أَنْ** ← **تَسْتَطِيعُ**  
you (♀) can / she can

(al-bait) **في البيت** \_\_\_\_\_  
the house

(tahb-qee-na) **تَبْقِينَ** \_\_\_\_\_  
you (♀) stay

(tahf-ha-mee) **تفهمي العربية** \_\_\_\_\_  
understand

(ahn) (tahs-ta-Tee-roo-na) **أَنْ** ← **تَسْتَطِيعِينَ**  
you (♀) can

(ah-ahooq-qa) **في الشقة** \_\_\_\_\_  
the apartment

(yahb-qa) **يَبْقَى** \_\_\_\_\_  
he stays

(yahk-ra-ah) **يقرأ العربية** \_\_\_\_\_  
read

(yaha-ta-Tee-roo) **أَنْ** ← **يَسْتَطِيعُ**  
he can

(qa-Tar) **في قطر** \_\_\_\_\_  
Qatar

(nahb-qa) **نَبْقَى** \_\_\_\_\_  
we stay

(al-in-shlee-zee-ya) (na-ta-kel-lq-ma) **نتكلم الإنجليزية** \_\_\_\_\_  
English speak

(nahs-ta-Tee-roo) **أَنْ** ← **نَسْتَطِيعُ**  
we can

(da-bee) (ah-baa) **في أبو ظبي** \_\_\_\_\_  
Abu Dhabi

(yahb-qoo-na) **يَبْقُونَ** \_\_\_\_\_  
they stay

(ya-ta-kel-lq-maa) **يتكلموا الإنجليزية** \_\_\_\_\_  
speak

(yaks-ta-Tee-roo-na) **أَنْ** ← **يَسْتَطِيعُونَ**  
they can

educated person (♂) . . . . (moo-ta-ahl-lim) . . . . . **مُتَعَلِّمٌ** ←

**عَلِمٌ** educated person (♀) . . . . (moo-ta-ahl-lee-ma) . . . . . **مُتَعَلِّمَةٌ**

education . . . . . (ta-leem) . . . . . **تَعْلِيمٌ**

Use the flash cards at the back of **هَذَا الْكِتَابُ** ← to drill these وَ other verbs. You saw that

the verbs **أَسْتَطِيعُ** ← <sup>(ahs-ta-Tee-roo)</sup> I can and **يَجِبُ** ← <sup>(yeh-zhee-boo)</sup> it must be are joined with another verb by adding **أَنْ** <sup>(ahn)</sup>.

<sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> <sup>(ah-ta-ke-l-la-ma)</sup> <sup>(ahn)</sup> <sup>(yeh-zhee-boo)</sup>  
**الغَرِيبَةَ** **أَنْ أَتَكَلَّمَ** ← **يَجِبُ** ←  
 speak it must be / I must

<sup>(al-kee-taab)</sup> <sup>(esh-ta-ree-ya)</sup>  
**الْكِتَابِ** **أَنْ أَشْتَرِي** ← **يَجِبُ** ←  
 the book buy

<sup>(al-ee-raaq)</sup> <sup>(ee-la)</sup> <sup>(oo-seh-fee-ra)</sup>  
**إِلَى الْعِرَاقِ** **أَنْ أَسَافِرَ** ← **يَجِبُ** ←  
 Iraq travel

<sup>(al-r-ra-be-ya)</sup> <sup>(ah-ta-ke-l-la-ma)</sup> <sup>(ahn)</sup> <sup>(ahs-ta-Tee-roo)</sup>  
**الغَرِيبَةَ** **أَنْ أَتَكَلَّمَ** ← **أَسْتَطِيعُ** ←  
 speak I can

<sup>(ahf-ha-ma)</sup>  
**الغَرِيبَةَ** **أَنْ أَفْهَمَ** ← **أَسْتَطِيعُ** ←  
 understand I can

<sup>(ahk-too-ba)</sup>  
**بِالغَرِيبَةَ** **أَنْ أَكْتُبَ** ← **أَسْتَطِيعُ** ←  
 in Arabic write

Did you notice that the verb following “أَنْ” changed its last vowel from **أَتَكَلَّمُ** <sup>(oo)</sup> to **أَتَكَلَّمْ** <sup>(ah)</sup>?

Can **أَنْتَ** translate the sentences below **إِلَى** <sup>(ee-la)</sup> **الغَرِيبَةَ** <sup>(al-eeh-see-ba)</sup> **الأجوبة** ← are below.  
 into the answers

1. I can speak Arabic. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It must be that I pay the bill now. \_\_\_\_\_
3. We do not know the address. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We can pay the bill. \_\_\_\_\_
5. She stays in the hotel. \_\_\_\_\_
6. You (♠) can speak Arabic. **تَسْتَطِيعِينَ أَنْ تَتَكَلَّمِي الْعَرَبِيَّةَ.** \_\_\_\_\_
7. I say “yes.” \_\_\_\_\_
8. We say “yes” in Arabic. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I want to travel to Lebanon. \_\_\_\_\_
10. She reads the newspaper. \_\_\_\_\_

### الأجوبة

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ٦ ← تَسْتَطِيعِينَ أَنْ تَتَكَلَّمِي الْعَرَبِيَّةَ. | ١ ← أَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ أَتَكَلَّمَ الْغَرِيبَةَ. |
| ٧ أَقُولُ “نَعَمْ”.                                  | ٢ يَجِبُ أَنْ أَدْفَعَ الْحِسَابَ الْآنَ.      |
| ٨ نَقُولُ “نَعَمْ” بِالْغَرِيبَةَ.                   | ٣ لَا نَعْرِفُ الْعُنْوَانَ.                   |
| ٩ أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَسَافِرَ إِلَى لُبْنَانَ.            | ٤ نَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ نَدْفَعَ الْحِسَابَ.        |
| ١٠ تَقْرَأُ الْجَرِيدَةَ.                            | ٥ تَبْقَى فِي الْفُنْدُقِ.                     |

(by-na) draw lines **بَيْنَ** the opposites **أَسْفَلَ** Don't forget to say them out loud. Use **هَذِهِ**

(eh-ah-ee) below (bait) (ma-dra-sa) school  
**الكلمات** every day to describe **أشياء** in your **بَيْتِ**, in your **مَدْرَسَةِ** and at work.

(mef-tooH)

مَفْتُوحٌ

(zhy-yed)

جَيِّدٌ

(saeH-He)

صَحِيٌّ

(ba-Tee')

بَطِيءٌ

(tha-meen)

ثَمِينٌ

(ruh-nee)

عَنِيءٌ

(ka-thee-rah)

كَثِيرًا

(ka-beer)

كَبِيرٌ

(Ta-woel)

طَوِيلٌ

(ka-beer)

كَبِيرٌ

(qa-saeer)

قَصِيرٌ

(ya-saar)

يَسَارٌ

(Har)

حَارٌ

(Ta-woel)

طَوِيلٌ

(ssa-greer)

صَغِيرٌ

(bear-id)

بَارِدٌ

cold

(Dy-eef)

ضَعِيفٌ

(ssa-greer)

صَغِيرٌ

(moog-lahq)

مُغْلَقٌ

(ya-meen)

يَمِينٌ

(qa-saeer)

قَصِيرٌ

(qa-leg-lahn)

قَلِيلًا

(fa-qeer)

فَقِيرٌ

(sa-reer)

سَرِيعٌ

(ra-keez)

رَخِيسٌ

(ma-reeD)

مَرِيضٌ



Maybe **أَنْتِ** will ride **جَمَلٍ** around **دَاخِلِ** **حِصَانٍ** **أَوْ** **مِصْرَ** **فِي** **الْأَهْرَامِ** the Atlas  
 (zha-mel) a camel (daak-fo-la) (Ho-ssaan) (meess-ur) (al-ah-raam) the Pyramids

**مَونْتَيْنِ** **فِي** **الْمَغْرِبِ** Mountains. You will have many wonderful new adventures **وَ** you will have them in Arabic!

\_\_\_\_\_ **سَافِرٌ** to travel. .... (saa-fa-ra).....

\_\_\_\_\_ **سَافِرٌ** traveler (♂)..... (moo-seh-fer).....

\_\_\_\_\_ **سَافِرَةٌ** traveler (♀)..... (moo-seh-fee-ra).....

(oo-seh-fee-roo) **أَسَافِرُ**  
I travel

(qa-Tar) (reh-dahn) **عَدَا فِي قَطْر**  
Qatar tomorrow

(al-koow-eeit) (al-yahm) **الْيَوْمَ فِي الْكُوَيْتِ**  
Kuwait today

(al-yeh-men) (ahms) **أَمْسَ فِي الْيَمَنِ**  
Yemen yesterday

(leeb-yaa) (al-ar-ba-aa') **الْأَرْبَعَاءَ فِي لِيْبِيَا**  
Libya Wednesday

(roo-maan) (ah-ith-nayn) **الْإِثْنَيْنِ فِي عُْمَانَ**  
Oman Monday

(al-oor-doon) (al-ha-meess) **الْحَمِيسَ فِي الْأُرْدُنِ**  
Jordan Thursday

If you know a few key **كَلِمَات**, traveling in an Arabic-speaking **بَلَد** will be so much easier, more enjoyable **وَ** rewarding.

(too-seh-fee-roo) (kay-fa) **كَيْفَ تُسَافِرُ؟**  
do you (?) travel how

(bih-sy-yaa-ra) (yoo-seh-fee-roo) (moo-Hahm-med) **يُسَافِرُ بِالسَّيَّارَةِ. مُحَمَّد**  
travels by car Muhammed



(bil-qee-Taar) (yoo-seh-fee-roo) (ka-reem) **يُسَافِرُ بِالْقَطَارِ. كَرِيم**  
by train travels Karim

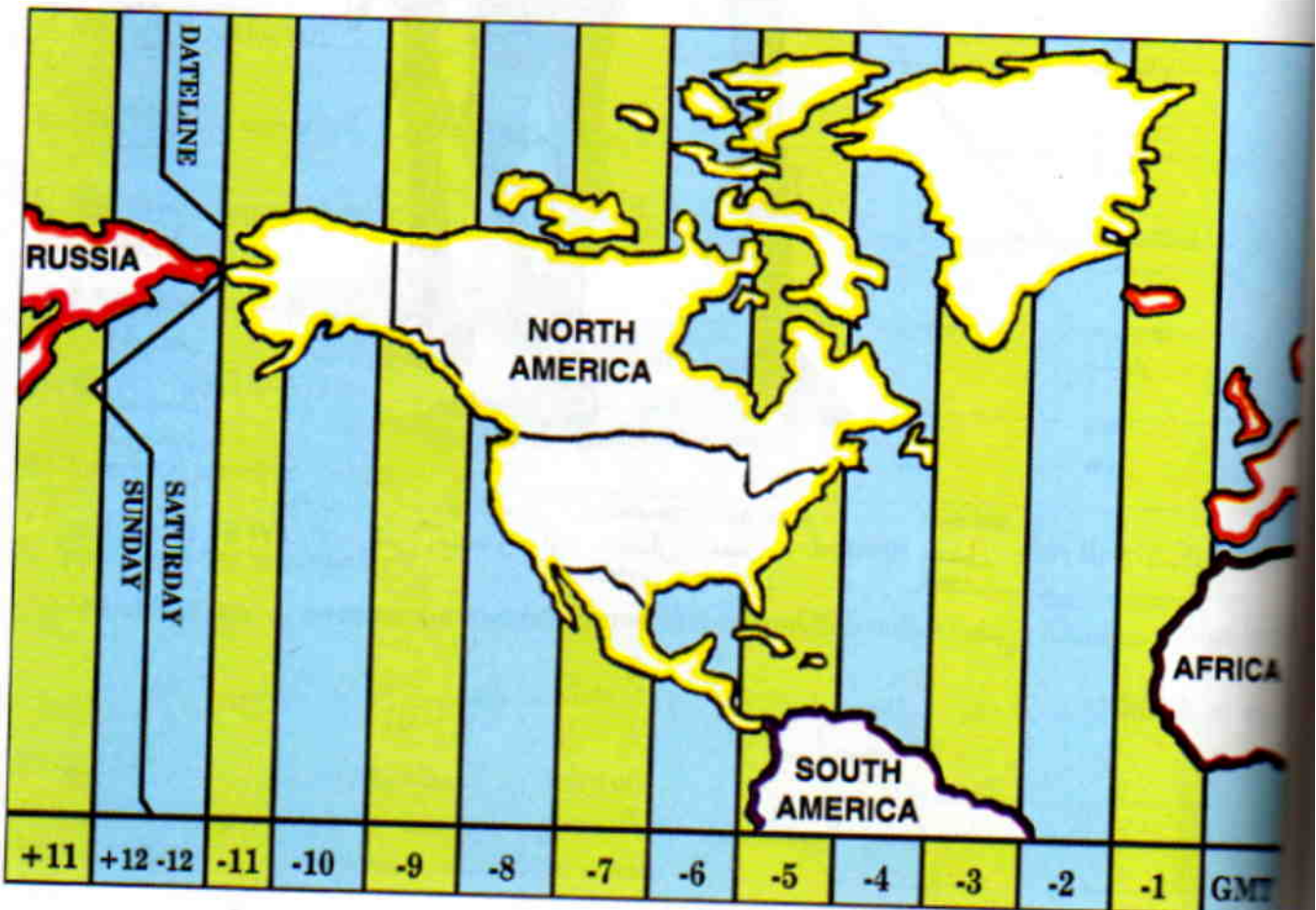
(bih-Taa-ee-ra) (yoo-seh-fee-roo) (na-beel) **يُسَافِرُ بِالطَّائِرَةِ. نَبِيل**  
by airplane travels Nabil

(bil-Haa-fee-la) (too-seh-fee-roo) (mehah-da) **يُسَافِرُ بِالْحَافِلَةِ. مَاجِدَة**  
by bus travels Mezhd

(bih-sy-yaa-ra) (yoo-seh-fee-roo) (ah-mahd) **يُسَافِرُ بِالسَّيَّارَةِ. أَحْمَد**  
travels by car Ahmed



(bil-beer-ke-ra) (too-seh-fee-roo) (ah-mee-na) **يُسَافِرُ بِالْبَاحِرَةِ. أَمِينَة**  
by boat travels Amina

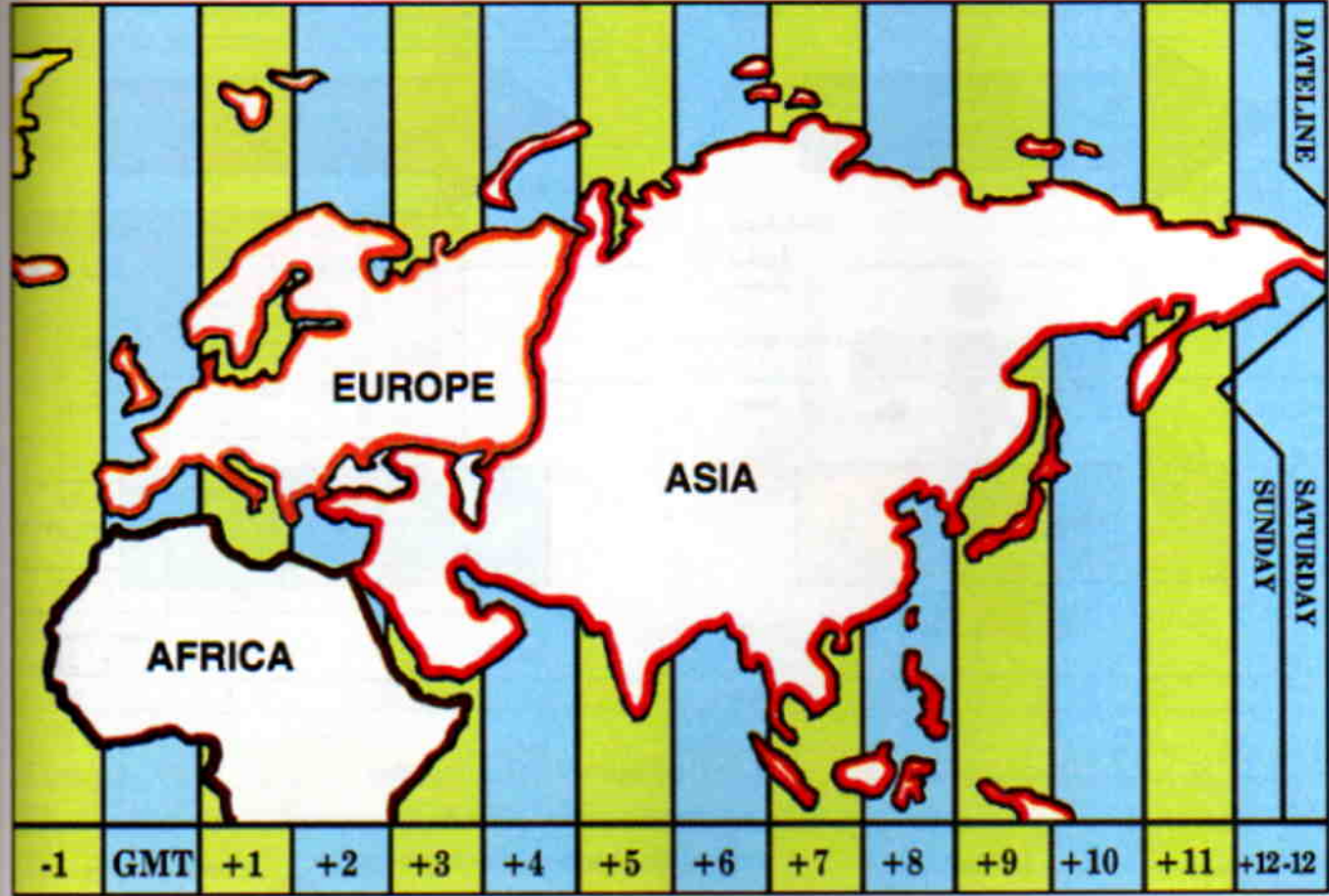


When <sup>(n-ta)</sup>أنت are traveling, أنت will want to tell others your nationality and أنت will meet people

from all corners of the world. Can you guess where someone is from if they say one of the

following? <sup>(al-azh-wo-ba)</sup>الأجوبة ← are in your glossary beginning on page 108.

- |  |  |                         |                           |  |   |                           |
|--|--|-------------------------|---------------------------|--|---|---------------------------|
| <sup>(ah-sau-dee-ya)</sup> أنا من <b>السعودية</b> .  | <sup>(al-r-ra-bo-ya)</sup> أنا من <b>الغربية</b> . | <sup>(min)</sup> من     | <sup>(ah-naa)</sup> أنا ← | <sup>(ahm-ree-kaa)</sup> أنا من <b>أمريكا</b> .          | <sup>(min)</sup> من                                   | <sup>(ah-naa)</sup> أنا ← |
| <sup>(fa-ies-Teen)</sup> أنا من <b>فلسطين</b> .      | <sup>(leeb-yaa)</sup> أنا من <b>ليبيا</b> .        | <sup>(ah-naa)</sup> أنا |                           | <sup>(ka-na-daa)</sup> أنا من <b>كندا</b> .              | <sup>(in-zhla-tair-raa)</sup> أنا من <b>إنجلترا</b> . |                           |
| <sup>(al-ee-raaq)</sup> أنا من <b>العراق</b> .       | <sup>(al-koo-wait)</sup> أنا من <b>الكويت</b> .    | <sup>(ah-naa)</sup> أنا |                           | <sup>(oos-too-raa-lee-ya)</sup> أنا من <b>أستراليا</b> . | <sup>(ah-soo-daan)</sup> أنا من <b>السودان</b> .      |                           |
| <sup>(too-noos)</sup> أنا من <b>تونس</b> .           | <sup>(al-ma-greb)</sup> أنا من <b>المغرب</b> .     | <sup>(ah-naa)</sup> أنا |                           | <sup>(al-oor-daan)</sup> أنا من <b>الأردن</b> .          | <sup>(meess-ur)</sup> أنا من <b>مصر</b> .             |                           |
| <sup>(al-zheh-zair-ir)</sup> أنا من <b>الجزائر</b> . |  | <sup>(ah-naa)</sup> أنا |                           | <sup>(soo-ree-yaa)</sup> أنا من <b>سوريا</b> .           |   |                           |



Most people love to travel so it is no wonder to find **كَلِمَات كَثِيرَة** <sup>(ka-thee-ra)</sup> many revolving around the concept of **سَفَر** <sup>(sa-far)</sup> travel which is exactly what **تُرِيدُ** <sup>(too-ree-do)</sup> you (I) want to do. Practice saying the following **كَلِمَات** many times. **أَنْتَ** will see them often.

\_\_\_\_\_ **أَسَافِرُ** <sup>(oo-seh-fee-roo)</sup> I travel \_\_\_\_\_ **مَكْتَبَ سَفَرٍ** <sup>(sa-far) (mahk-tahb)</sup> travel agency

\_\_\_\_\_ **مُسَافِرٍ** <sup>(moo-seh-fer)</sup> traveler \_\_\_\_\_ **سَفَرٍ** <sup>(sa-far)</sup> trip



If **أَنْتَ** choose to travel **بِالسِّيَّارَة** <sup>(bih-sy-yaa-ra)</sup> by car, here are a few key **كَلِمَات**.

\_\_\_\_\_ **طَرِيقٍ** <sup>(Ta-reeq)</sup> road / freeway \_\_\_\_\_ **مَحْطَة البَنْزِينِ** <sup>(al-ben-zeen) (ma-HahT-Taht)</sup> gas station

\_\_\_\_\_ **شَارِعٍ** <sup>(sheh-re')</sup> big street \_\_\_\_\_ **رُقَقَة / رُقَاقٍ** <sup>(zoo-qaak) (za-na-qa)</sup> small street



Here are some basic signs which **أَنْتَ** should learn to recognize quickly **بِدُونِ** <sup>(be-doon)</sup> without the vowels.

\_\_\_\_\_ **دُخُولٍ** <sup>(dahk-ha-la)</sup> to enter \_\_\_\_\_ **خُرُوجٍ** <sup>(ha-ra-zha)</sup> to exit

\_\_\_\_\_ **دُخُولٍ** <sup>(dook-hool)</sup> entrance \_\_\_\_\_ **خُرُوجٍ** <sup>(hoo-roozh)</sup> exit

\_\_\_\_\_ **الدُّخُولِ مَمْنُوعٍ** <sup>(mem-noo')(ah-dook-hool)</sup> no entrance \_\_\_\_\_ **الخُرُوجِ مَمْنُوعٍ** <sup>(mem-noo')(al-hoo-roozh)</sup> no exit

\_\_\_\_\_ **اِفْتَحْ** <sup>(if-taH)</sup> push \_\_\_\_\_ **اِغْلَقْ** <sup>(ear-lahq)</sup> pull

\_\_\_\_\_ **سَفَرٍ** <sup>(sa-far)</sup> trip / journey ..... **سَفَرٍ** <sup>(sa-far)</sup> trip / journey

\_\_\_\_\_ **سَفَرٍ** <sup>(sa-far)</sup> travel agency ..... **مَكْتَبَ سَفَرٍ** <sup>(sa-far)(mahk-tahb)</sup> travel agency

\_\_\_\_\_ **سَفَرٍ** <sup>(sa-far)</sup> traveler's checks ..... **شِيكات سَفَرٍ** <sup>(sa-far)(shee-ket)</sup> traveler's checks

Take out a piece of paper و make up your own sentences with these **الكلمات الجديدة** ← Follow

(hoo-naa-ka)

new

the same pattern you have in previous Steps, but note that "هناك" does not change its form!

there is, there are

(ah-zoo-roo)

أزور  
I visit

(ahd-hoo-loo)

أدخل  
I enter

(ah-ssee-loo)

أصل  
I arrive

(oo-raa-dee-roo)

أغادر  
I leave, depart

(ah-soo-qoo)

أسوق  
I drive

(aH-zhee-zoo)

أحجز  
I reserve

(aH-zee-moo)

أحزم  
I pack

(hoo-naa-ka)

هناك  
there is, there are

(hoo-na) (zha-dee-da) (sa-far)  
some **كلمات جديدة** ← for your **سفر**.  
new trip

(al-ma-Taar)

المطار  
airport

(al-Haa-fee-laat) (ma-HahT-Taht)

محطة الحافلات  
bus station



(ah-tao-qeet)

التوقيت  
timetable

(al-qee-Taar) (ma-HahT-Taht)

محطة القطار  
train station

(ah-rae-yaad)	(al-qaa-he-ra)	
الوصول	طيران	الذهاب
arrival	flight	departure
10:30	50	8:00
12:30	19	10:00
15:30	10	13:00
18:30	4	16:00
22:30	22	20:00



طلب to order / ask ..... (Ta-la-ba) .....  
 طلب application ..... (Ta-lahb) .....  
 طلب order form ..... (Ta-lahb) .....

(n-ta) أنت (heh-da-ke) مع هذه الكلمات أنت (sa-far) سافر anywhere. أنت should have no problem

مع these verbs, just remember the basic "plug-in" formula أنت learned already. Use that knowledge to translate the following thoughts إلى العربية (ee-la) into.

1. I reserve a car. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I drive to Rabat (الرباط). \_\_\_\_\_
3. The bus leaves at 9:30. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We arrive tomorrow in Jordan. \_\_\_\_\_
5. You (♂) travel to Cairo. \_\_\_\_\_
6. They travel to Qatar. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Where is the bus to Amman? \_\_\_\_\_
8. How do we travel to Morocco? \_\_\_\_\_

هنا some (zhid-dahn) جداً important words for the traveler.



(mahsh-rool) مَشغول  
occupied

(sheh-rir) شاغِر  
free

(koor-see) كُرسي  
seat

(neh-fee-da) نافذة  
window

(da-kaab) ذهاب  
departure

('ooo-ssool) وُصول  
arrival

(raa-la-me) عالمي  
International

(ma-Hahl-lee) محلي  
domestic

### الأجوبة

- 1 ← أحجزُ سَيارة.
- 2 أسوقُ إلى الرباط.
- 3 الحافلة تُغادِرُ في التاسعة وَ النِّصف.
- 4 نصلُ غداً إلى الأردن.
- 5 تُسافرُ إلى القاهرة.
- 6 يُسافرونَ إلى قطر.
- 7 أين الحافلة إلى عمّان؟
- 8 كيف تُسافرُ إلى المغرب؟



Increase your travel **كَلِمَات** ← by writing out **أَسْفَل** <sup>(ahs-fahl)</sup> and practicing the sample sentences out loud. Practice asking “أَيْنَ” <sup>(eye-na)</sup> questions. It will help you later.

إِلَى <sup>(ee-la)</sup>

أَيْنَ الحافِلة إلى الإسكَنْدريَّة؟  
Alexandria

تذْكَرة <sup>(teth-kee-ra)</sup>

بِغَم التذْكَرة إلى الإسكَنْدريَّة؟  
ticket

مِنْ <sup>(min)</sup>

أَيْنَ الحافِلة القايمة مِنْ البتراء؟  
Petra coming

مَكْتَب الإرشادات <sup>(al-ir-sheh-daat) (mahk-tahb)</sup>

أَيْنَ مَكْتَب الإرشادات؟  
information office

مَكْتَب حوائج المُسافِرين <sup>(al-moo-seh-fee-reen) (How-weh-ish) (mahk-tahb)</sup>

أَيْنَ مَكْتَب حوائج المُسافِرين؟  
left-luggage office

عَرَبِيَّة <sup>(ah-ra-ba)</sup>

أَيْنَ العَرَبِيَّة؟  
luggage cart / trolley

كُرسي <sup>(koor-see)</sup>

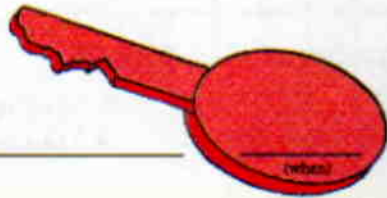
مِنْ فَضْلِكَ، هَلْ هَذَا الكُرسي مَشغول؟  
occupied seat

شَاغِر <sup>(sheh-rir)</sup>

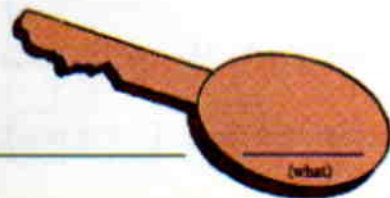
مِنْ فَضْلِكَ، هَلْ هَذَا الكُرسي شَاغِر؟  
free

شُبَّاك <sup>(shoob-bek)</sup>

مِنْ فَضْلِكَ، أَيْنَ الشُّبَّاك رَقْم ثَمَانِيَّة؟  
counter number



تُرِيدُ؟  
do you (I) want



(what)

(fa-les-Teen)

(too-seh-fee-roo)

إِلَى فِلَسْطِين؟

تُسافِرُ  
do you travel

طالب <sup>(Taa-leeb)</sup>

طالب <sup>(Taa-lee-ba)</sup>

مُتطلِّبات <sup>(moo-ta-Tahl-leh-bet)</sup> requirements

طَلَبَ

(n-tee)  
Can أَنْتِ read the following?  
(#)



(ow) (al-ma-greb) (oo-seh-fee-roo)  
أَسَافِرُ إِلَى الْمَغْرِبِ. أَوْ

(al-oor-doon) (oo-seh-fee-roo)  
أَسَافِرُ إِلَى الْأُرْدُنِ. أَوْ

(al-koo-wait) (oo-seh-fee-roo)  
أَسَافِرُ إِلَى الْكُوَيْتِ.

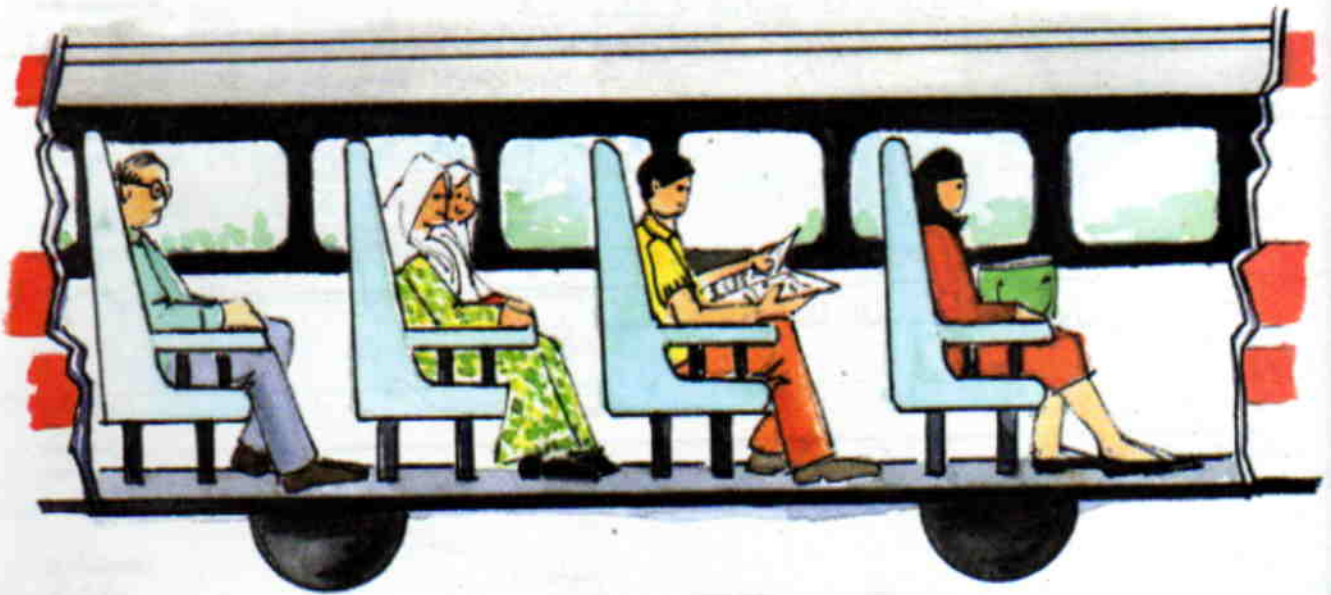
(foo-loos) (rin-dee)  
عِنْدِي فُلُوسٌ.

(zha-dee-da) (Ha-qee-ba) (sa-far) (zhao-wez) (toth-kee-ra) (rin-dee)  
عِنْدِي تَذْكَرَةٌ، جَوَازَ سَفَرٍ، وَ حَقِيْبَةٌ جَدِيْدَةٌ.  
new suitcase passport

(saa-ee-Ha) (saa-eH)  
أَنَا سَائِحٌ أَوْ أَنَا سَائِحَةٌ.  
(#) tourist (#)

(ssa-baa-Hahn) (al-ah-she-ra) (reh-dahn) (ah-see-lo)  
أَصِلْ عَدَا فِي الْعَاشِرَةِ صَبَاحًا.  
ten o'clock

(sy-yeed)  
سَفَرٌ سَعِيْدٌ!  
Have a good trip!



(al-oor-doon) (soo-ree-yaa)  
وَأَكْثَرُ الْأُرْدُنِ أَوْ فِي سُوْرِيَا ← most Arabic-speaking countries the bus is the most common form

of transport. Make sure أَنْتِ find out in advance if أَنْتِ need أَوْ قِطْعَةٌ نَقُوْدٍ ← possibly a  
a token

special bus card. In any case, be sure أَنْتِ have enough قِطْعَةٌ نَقْدِيَّةٌ ← with you.  
coins

This should help you identify various ways of food preparation.

baked .....(mahk-booz)..... مَخْبُوْزٌ ← □  
broiled .....(magh-lee) ..... مَغْلِي □  
steamed .....(moo-bahk-khur)..... مُبْحَرٌ □

(ka-lee-maat)

Knowing these travel **كَلِمَات** will make your holiday twice as enjoyable **وَ** at least three times

(al-zha-dee-da)

(heh-da-ke)

as easy. Review **الكَلِمَات الجَدِيدَة** **هَذِهِ** by doing the crossword puzzle **أَسْفَل**. Drill

(ahs-fahl)

below

yourself on this Step by selecting other destinations **وَ** ask your own **أَسْئَلَة** about

(es-ee-la)

(Taa-ee-raat)

(Haa-fee-laat)

(qee-Taa-raat)

(zha-dee-da) (ka-lee-maat)

**طَائِرَات** **وَ** **حَافِلَات**، **قَطَارَات** that go there. Select **كَلِمَات جَدِيدَة** from your

airplanes

buses

trains

(qaa-moos)

(es-ee-la)

**قَامُوس** ask your own **أَسْئَلَة** that begin with **بِكَمْ** **أَيْنَ** **مَتَى** . **الأَجْوِبَة** to

dictionary

questions

(be-ken)

(eye-na)

(neh-ta)

(al-ezh-we-ba)

how much

where

when

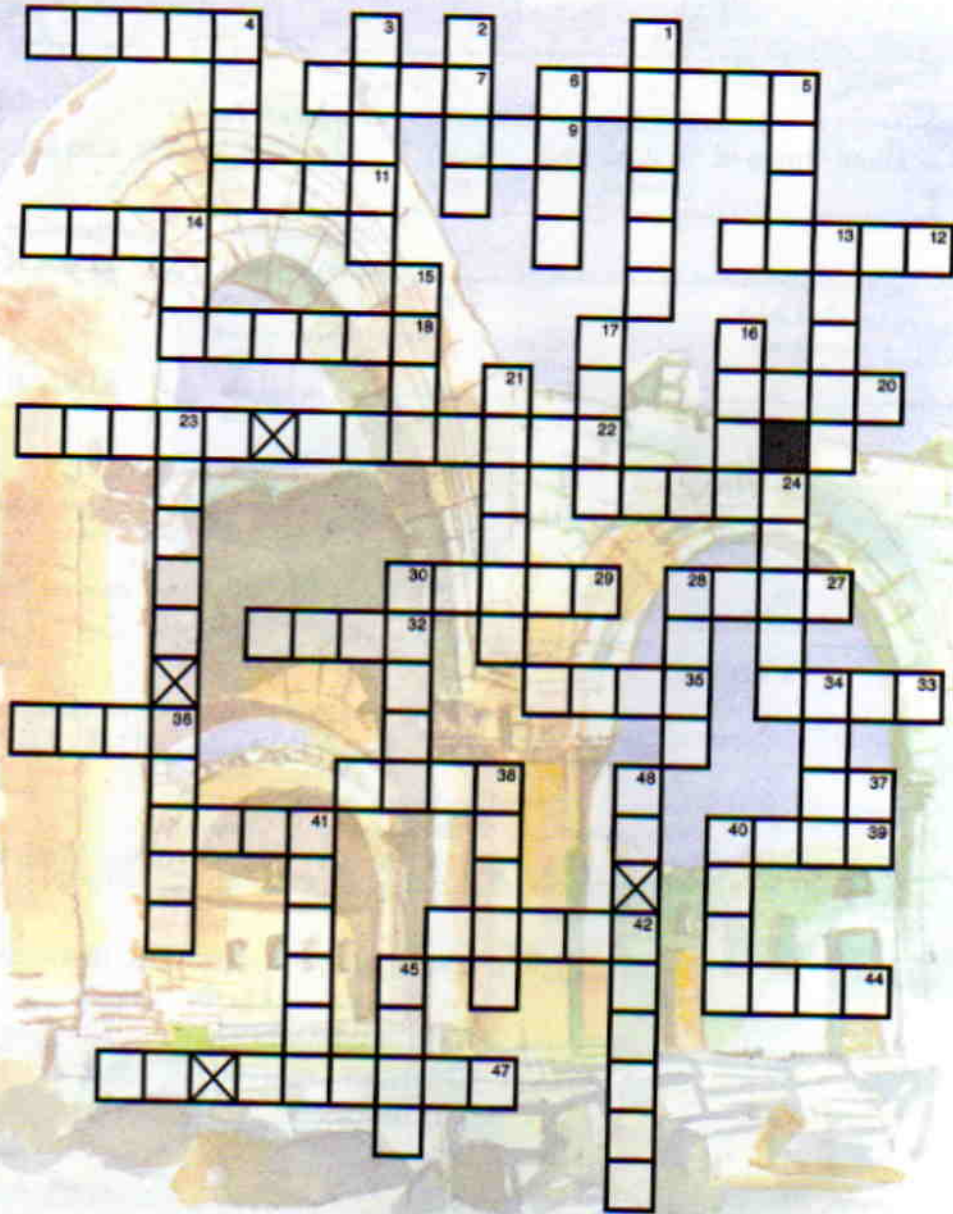
the crossword puzzle are at the bottom of the next page.

### ACROSS

- 4. newspaper
- 5. the airport
- 7. bill
- 9. to exit
- 11. father
- 12. ticket
- 14. July
- 18. planes
- 20. mosque
- 22. by airmail
- 24. letter
- 27. stamp
- 29. a lot
- 32. thank you
- 33. paper
- 35. arrival
- 36. I sell
- 37. I have
- 38. I repeat
- 39. I want
- 41. I read
- 42. I learn
- 44. I say
- 47. I can / am able to

### DOWN

- 1. postcards
- 2. I reserve
- 3. dictionary
- 4. new
- 5. I visit
- 6. cheap
- 13. church
- 14. under
- 15. airport
- 16. I study
- 17. cart / trolley
- 21. Palestine
- 23. menu
- 24. shower
- 28. you're welcome
- 30. I buy
- 34. short
- 37. no
- 38. I speak
- 40. entrance
- 41. give me
- 45. I write
- 48. What time is it?



**Remember :** When you do your crossword puzzles, you do not need to use any of the vowels.

What about inquiring about the price of تذكرة ← Remember, العربية ← and تَتَكَلَّمُ  
 (al-r-ra-be-ya) (ta-ta-kel-la-moo) you (I) speak  
 (teth-kee-ra) (a) ticket

(ahn) (taks-ta-Tee-roo) (al-es-ee-la) (heh-da-he)  
 تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ ← ask الأسئلة ← هذه ←  
 you (I) can questions these

بِكَمْ التَّذْكَرَةُ إِلَى الْقَاهِرَةِ؟ (al-qaa-he-ra) (ah-teth-kee-ra) (be-kem)  
 the ticket how much

بِكَمْ التَّذْكَرَةُ إِلَى مَرَّاكُشْ؟ (moor-raa-koosh) (ah-teth-kee-ra)  
 Marrakech

بِكَمْ التَّذْكَرَةُ إِلَى تُونِسْ؟ (too-noos) (ah-teth-kee-ra)

رحلة "نَهَاب" أو "إِيَاب" (ee-yeb) (da-haab) (reH-la)  
 one-way trip

ماذا about times of تَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ ← also ask الأسئلة ← هذه ←  
 what departure arrival you (I) can questions

مَتَى تُغَادِرُ الحافلة إِلَى الجَزَائِرِ؟ (al-zheh-zair-ir) (al-Haa-fee-la) (too-raa-dee-roo) (meh-ta)  
 leaves when Algeria the bus

مَتَى تُغَادِرُ الحافلة إِلَى طَرَابُلُسْ؟ (Ta-raa-bloos) (too-raa-dee-roo) (meh-ta)  
 leaves Tripoli

مَتَى تُصِلُ الحافلة مِنْ دِمَشْقِ؟ (deh-mahshk) (ta-ssee-loo)  
 arrives from Damascus

مَتَى تُصِلُ الطائرة مِنْ بَيْرُوتِ؟ (bay-root) (min) (ah-Taa-ee-ra) (ta-ssee-loo)  
 the plane Beirut

مَتَى تُغَادِرُ الطائرة إِلَى شَرْمِ الشَّيْخِ؟ (ah-sheek) (sharm) (ah-Taa-ee-ra) (too-raa-dee-roo)  
 leaves Al-Sheik Sharm

Well, tell that to the person تَرِيدُ أَنْ تُسَافِرَ إِلَى عَمَّانِ. (ahn-maan) (too-seh-fee-ra) (oo-ree-do)  
 you (I) travel you (I) want

أَنْتَ فِي المَطَارِ. (al-ma-Taar) (ah-shoob-hek)  
 the airport selling الشَّبَاكِ ← التَّذَاكِرِ ←  
 the counter tickets

(sy-yeed) سَفَرٌ سَعِيدٌ  
 Have a good trip

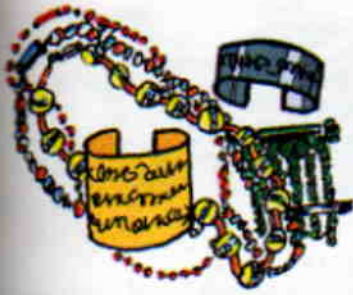
### الأجوبة TO THE CROSSWORD PUZZLE

DOWN		ACROSS	
34. قصير	15. المطار	1. بطاقات	20. مسجد
37. لا	16. ادرس	2. احجز	22. بالبريد الجوي
38. اتكلم	17. عربة	3. قاموس	24. رسالة
40. دخول	21. فلسطين	4. جديد	27. طابع
41. اعطيني	23. لائحة الاكل	5. ازود	29. كثيرا
45. اكتب	24. رشاشة	6. رخيص	32. شكرا
48. كم الساعة؟	28. عفوا	13. كنيسة	38. ورقة
	30. اشتري	14. تحت	35. وصول
		36. ابيع	4. جريدة
		37. لي	5. المطار
		38. اعيد	7. حساب
		39. اريد	9. خرج
		41. اقرا	11. والد
		42. اتعلم	12. تذكرة
		44. اقول	14. تموز
		47. استطيع ان	18. طائرات

(al-ann) (ta-ree-foo) the words essential for traveling – to Bahrain, Tunisia, Iraq, Yemen أو (ow)

Morocco – what are some speciality items أنت might go in search of?

(moo-zhao-ha-ret) **مُجوهرات**  
jewellery



(meh-leh-bes) **ملابس**  
clothing



(koo-ooa) (wa) (qa-wa) (ee-breeq) **إبريق قهوة و كؤوس**  
coffee set



(lao-Het) **لوحات**  
paintings



(za-haa-rif) **زخارف**  
decorative arts / ornamentation



(sahzh-zeh-det) **سجاجدات**  
rugs / carpets



Consider using ARABIC a language map\* as well. ARABIC a language map\* is the perfect companion for your travels when أنت may not wish to take along هذا الكتاب. Each section focuses on essentials for your سفر. Your Language Map\* is not meant to replace learning العربية, but will help you in the event أنك forget something and need a little bit of help. For more information about the Language Map\* Series, please turn to page 132.

- fried ..... (mahq-lee) ..... **مقلي**
- roasted ..... (mesh-we) ..... **مَشوي**
- boiled ..... (mahss-looq) ..... **مَصْلوق**

(zhy-yeā) (ma-Tahm) (hoo-naa-ka) (hel) (zhao-aan) (al-foon-dooq) (bay-root) (n-ta)  
 مَطْعَمٌ جَيِّدٌ؟ هَلْ هُنَاكَ أَنْتَ جَوْعَانَ. أَنْتَ فِي الْفُنْدُقِ. أَنْتَ فِي بَيْرُوتِ.

First of all, there are different types of places to eat. Let's learn them.

Many different national cuisines are represented, so أَنْتَ have plenty of interesting choices. (ma-Tahm) ← مَطْعَمٌ restaurant

serves food وَ is your afternoon stop for coffee (mahq-ka) ← مَقْهَى café

serves a variety of dishes (kaa-fee-tair-rec-aa) ← كَافِيْتِيرِيَا cafeteria

serves small pastries, breads, snacks, cheese, coffee, milk, juice (maH-la-ba) ← مَحَلَّة creosnery / deli

tent offering traditional and regional dishes (hy-ma) ← حَيْمَة tent

You may want to begin your meal with a plate of خَلْوَى or خُبْزٌ وَ خُمُّصٌ. Before beginning your مَعْرَاضَةٌ, be sure to wish those sharing your table: (Ty-ye-ba) (wehzh-ba) ← وَجِبَةٌ طَيِّبَةٌ enjoy your meal



(enjoy your meal)

And at least one more time for practice!

(enjoy your meal)

- \_\_\_\_\_ أَكَلٌ to eat ..... (aa-ka-la) .....
- \_\_\_\_\_ لَائِحَةُ الْأَكْلِ the menu ... (L-ah-kel) (la-ee-Ha) ...
- \_\_\_\_\_ بَيْتُ الْأَكْلِ the dining room .... (L-ah-kel) (bait) .....

(fa-laa-fel)

(hoobz)

Do not pass up the opportunity to enjoy **فَلَافِل** or fresh **حَبِز** at a falafel stand.

falafel

bread



(zhy-yed) (ma-Tahm)

(al-ma-Tahm)

(Taa-see-la)

Once you have found a **جَيِّد** **مَطْعَم** enter **المَطْعَم** and find **طَاوِلَة**. call

(sy-yeh-da)(yaa)

(ow)

(sy-yed)(yaa)

good restaurant

←

(L-ah-kel)

(la-ee-Ha)

(sy-yed) (yaa)

← **يا سَيِّد، لَابِحَة الأكل مِن فَضْلِكَ.**

← **يا سَيِّد** أو **يا سَيِّدَة** and say:

(Waiter, the menu please.)

(al-wehzh-ba) (kay-fa)

(shook-rahm)

If your waiter asks: **كَيْفَ الوَجِبَة ؟** You may simply say, **شُكْرًا** or if you are feeling

the meal

thank you

confident, say,

(raa-ee-ya) (may-ee-da)

← **هَذِهِ مَائِدَة رَائِعَة!**

This conveys that the food, service و the setting were all excellent. Be sure to enjoy the

custom **في** many **المَطَاعِم** of cleansing

(al-ma-Taa-im)

restaurants

your hands before و after the meal **مَعَ**

(al-weard) (maa')

← **ماء الوَرْد**

rosewater

(ahm-maan)

(al-ann) **الآن**, it may be breakfast time at home, but **أنت** are **في عَمَّان** and it is 20:00. Some

(al-ma-Taa-im)

(L-ah-kel) (la-ee-Ha)

**المَطَاعِم** post **لابِحَة الأكل** outside. Always read it before entering so **تَعْرِفُ** what type

restaurants

the menu

(ta-ree-foo)

you (f) knew

of meals و prices **أنت** will encounter inside.

إِحْتَفَلْ

to celebrate ..... (iH-ta-fa-la) .....  **إِحْتَفَلْ**

party ..... (Haf-la) .....  **خَفَلَة**

celebration ..... (iH-tee-fel) .....  **إِحْتِفَال**

(tha-laa-tha) (hoo-naa-ka)

ثلاثة  
three

هناك  
there are

main meals to enjoy every

(yohm)

يوم  
day

(shay)

شاي  
tea

(qa-wa)

قهوة  
coffee

and perhaps

(Hel-wa)

خلوى  
little sweets

for the tourist

بعَدَ الظَّهْرِ  
(in) the afternoon

(al-foo-Toor)

الفطور  
breakfast

breakfast may include bread, butter, cheese, eggs, olives, olive oil as well as شاي or قهوة

(al-ree-deh')

الغذاء  
lunch

the main meal of the day – usually served between 12:00 and 14:00

(al-ay-shaa')

العشاء  
dinner

usually served from 18:00 until the very late evening

(al-kee-taab) (keh-daa)

هنا a preview of delights to come . . . . At the back of الكتاب هذا you will find a sample

(L-ah-ke) (la-ee-Ha)

لائحة الأكل  
menu

(L-ah-ke) (la-ee-Ha)

لائحة الأكل  
menu

today

(al-zha-dee-da) (al-ka-lee-maat)

الكلمات الجديدة  
new

(rin-da-maa)

عندما  
when

you are ready to leave for

(al-ow-sahT) (ah-shark)

الأوسط  
the Middle East

(al-ha-leezh)

الخليج  
the Gulf

(ef-ree-qee-yaa) (sheh-mel)

شمال إفريقيا  
North Africa

cut out

(L-ah-ke) (la-ee-Ha)

لائحة الأكل  
menu

fold it and carry it in your pocket, wallet

(na-qoo-loo) (kay-fa)

أو purse. كيف نقول  
do we say how

these

(tha-laa-tha)

ثلاثة  
three

phrases which are so very important for the hungry traveler?

I am hungry.

Waiter, the menu, please.

Enjoy your meal!

(ah-shoor-ba) (yaa-koo-foo)

الشوربة؟  
soup

يأكل  
eats

(who)

(ah-shay) (yahsh-ra-boo)

يشرب الشاي؟  
drinks

(who)



(ah-ree-yahD)

إلى الرياض؟  
Riyadh

(yoo-ah-fee-roo)

يسافر  
(who)

حفلة موسيقية.. (moo-see-qee-ya) (Hahf-la) concert ..

احتفل حفل festival .....

المحتفلون the people celebrating ... (al-mooH-ta-fee-loon) .....



(ahs-fah) (L-ah-kel) (la-ee-Ha) ← has the main categories **أنت** will find in most **المطاعم**. Learn them (al-ma-Taa-im)

below (al-yohm) (tahs-ta-Teo-roo) ← so that **تُسْتَطِيعُ** easily recognize them when you dine out **أو** **في لبنان** (loob-naan) restaurants (meess-ur) today you (H) can

Be sure to write **الكلمات** in the blanks below. ← **في مصر**

(L-ah-kel) (la-ee-Ha)  
**لائحة الأكل**  
 the menu



(ha-feef) (ah-kel) ← **أكل خفيف**  
 light snacks



(Hel-wa) ← **خلوى**  
 dessert



(shoor-ba) ← **شوربة**  
 soup



(da-zhaazh) ← **نجاج**  
 poultry

(boo-Da) (kreem) (ice) ← **أيس كريم / بوضة**  
 ice cream

(by-eD) ← **بيض**  
 eggs



(faa-kee-ha) ← **فاكهة**  
 fruit



(sa-mahk) ← **سمك**  
 fish

(hoo-Daar) ← **خضار**  
 vegetables

(Hel-wa) ← **خلوى**  
 pastries, small cakes



(sa-la-Ta) ← **سلطة**  
 salad



(mahsh-roo-baat) ← **مشروبات**  
 beverages

(laHm) ← **لحم**  
 meat

\_\_\_\_\_ **أطعم** to feed ..... (ah-Ta-ma) .....   
 \_\_\_\_\_ **مطعم** restaurant ..... (ma-Tahm) .....   
 \_\_\_\_\_ **طعام** food ..... (Taam) .....

will also get <sup>(hoo-Daar)</sup> خُضار with your <sup>(ay-shaa')</sup> عِشاء and perhaps a <sup>(sa-la-Ta)</sup> سَلْطَة. One day at <sup>(ah-sook)</sup> السُّوق will teach you <sup>(ah-ees-maa')</sup> الأَسْمَاء for all the different kinds of <sup>(al-hoo-Daar)</sup> الخُضار and <sup>(al-fa-waa-kih)</sup> الفَوَاكِه, plus it will be a delightful experience for you. <sup>(al-hoo-Daar)</sup> الخُضار <sup>(al-fa-waa-kih)</sup> الفَوَاكِه

can always consult your menu guide at the back of <sup>(heh-daa)</sup> الكِتَاب if <sup>(al-eesm)</sup> أنْت forget the correct <sup>(al-ann)</sup> الإِسْم. <sup>(ya-zhee-oo)</sup> يَجِيءُ you are seated and the waiter <sup>(al-eesm)</sup> الإِسْم <sup>(al-ann)</sup> الآن



<sup>(al-foo-Toor)</sup> الفُطُور is delicious. <sup>(al-foo-Toor)</sup> الفُطُور includes cheese, eggs, olives, و bread أو rolls. <sup>(ahs-fah)</sup> أسْفَل is a sample of <sup>(taks-ta-Tee-roo) (maa)</sup> ما تُسْتَطِيعُ أن expect to greet you <sup>(ah-saa-baaH)</sup> في الصَّبَاح.

	<sup>(aa-koo-lop)</sup> أَكَل I eat		<sup>(ahsh-ra-boo)</sup> أَشْرَبُ I drink
	<sup>(hoobz)</sup> خُبْز		<sup>(qa-tee)</sup> قَهْوَة
	<sup>(zhoob-na)</sup> جُبْنَة cheese		<sup>(Ha-leeb)</sup> قَهْوَة مَعَ خَلِيب milk
	<sup>(by-eD)</sup> بَيْض eggs		<sup>(shay)</sup> شاي
	<sup>(zy-toon)</sup> زَيْتُون olives		<sup>(ra-sseer)</sup> عَصِير juice
	<sup>(he-yaar)</sup> خِيَار cucumbers		<sup>(loof-feH)</sup> تُفَّاح apple
	<sup>(Ta-maa-Tem)</sup> طَمَاطِم tomatoes		<sup>(boor-too-qaal)</sup> بُرْتِقَال orange
	<sup>(moo-rahb-ba)</sup> مُرَبِّي jam		<sup>(ry-nahb)</sup> عِنَب grape

إِطْعَام ..... (ih-Taam) ..... feeding .....  
 مُطْعِم ..... (moo-Time) ..... someone who feeds (\$) .....  
 مُطْعِمَة .. (moo-Ty-ee-ma) .. someone who feeds (\$) ..

<sup>(hoo-naa)</sup> <sup>(maa)</sup>  
 هنا an example of أنت ما ← might select for your evening meal. Using your menu guide  
 what

on pages 117 and 118, as well as أنت ما ← have learned in this Step, fill in the blanks

<sup>(sil-sen-zhlee-zee-ya)</sup> <sup>(al-ezh-we-ba)</sup>  
 بالإنجليزية أسفل. ← الأجابة أنت ما believe the waiter will bring you. In English

<sup>(moo-qahb-be-let)</sup>  
 مُقَبَّلَات ←  
 appetizers

---

<sup>(bahs-Tea-la)</sup>  
 بَسْطِيْلَة

---

<sup>(sa-la-Ta)</sup>  
 سَلْطَة ←

---

<sup>(moo-bahk-ka-ra)</sup> <sup>(hoo-Daar)</sup>  
 خُضَار مَبْخَرَة

---

<sup>(moo-shah-he-yet)</sup>  
 مُشَهَّيَات ←  
 entrees

---

<sup>(ha-roof)</sup>  
 خُرُوف مَعَ خُضَار

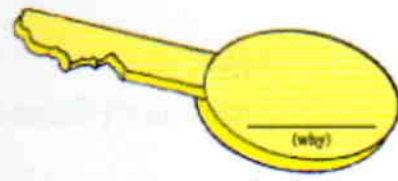
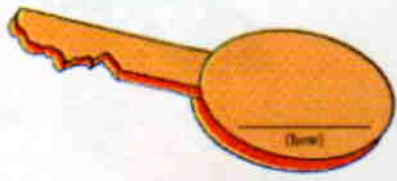
---

<sup>(Hal-wa)</sup>  
 خَلْوَى ←

---

<sup>(meesh-meech)</sup>  
 خَلْوَى مَعَ مِشْمِش

---



<p>الأجابة</p> <p>Appetizers: bastilla: chicken with spices, almonds, onion, garlic and parsley</p> <p>Salad: steamed vegetables</p> <p>Entrees: lamb with vegetables</p> <p>Desserts: cake with apricots</p>
---

(al-ann)

بين الغليمات العربية و الآن it is a good time for a quick review. Draw lines between

their English equivalents.

we eat

restaurant

give me

beverages

thank you

I want

I drink

the bill

I phone

lunch

the mail

breakfast

dinner



(ahsh-ru-boo)

أَشْرَبُ

(oo-ree-daj)

أُرِيدُ

(mahsh-roo-baat)

مَشْرُوبَات

(al-Heh-saab)

الجِسَاب

(naa-koo-loo)

نَأْكُلُ

(al-ree-deh')

الغِذَاء

(al-foo-Toor)

الْفُطُور

(ma-Tahm)

مَطْعَم

(al-ba-reed)

الْبَرِيد

(be) (aht-ta-see-loo)

أُصِلُّ

(al-ay-shaa')

العِشَاء

(shook-rahn)

شُكْرًا

(ah-Teo-nee)

أَعْطَيْنِي

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

شُكْرًا

to thank ..... (sha-ka-ra) ..... شُكْرًا

thank you ..... (shook-rahn) ..... شُكْرًا

thanksgiving .... (ah-shoo-kur)(reed).... عيد الشُّكْرِ

(maa)      (al-ma-greb)      (al-koo-seait)      (al-haa-tif)  
 ما is different about      الهاتف في الكويت و المغرب؟ Well, أنت never notice such  
 what      (taH-teh-zhee-na)      (al-haa-tif)      (foon-dooq)  
 things until إلى      تحتاجين use them.      الهاتف allows you to reserve your فندق in  
 (al-ahss-dee-qaa')      (al-maht-Haft)      (saa-raat)  
 another city, call الأصدقاء, order tickets, make emergency calls, check on ساعات المتحف  
 (al-eh-zhee')      (of) the museum      the hours  
 and all those other الأشياء which أنت do on a daily basis.  
 things

For many telephones أنت must buy  
 (teh-lee-foo-nee-ya) (be-Taa-qa)      (noo-qood) (geh-Tart)  
 قطعة نقود أو بطاقة تليفونية  
 a phone card      a token  
 (tahs-ta-Tee-ree-na)  
 before أن تستطيعين أن use them. You can buy  
 (teh-lee-foo-nee-ya) (be-Taa-qa)      (noo-qood) (geh-Tart)  
 قطعة نقود أو بطاقة تليفونية  
 a phone card      a token



(al-haa-tif)  
 Let's learn how to operate الهاتف.  
 Instructions can look complicated, but remember,  
 (heh-da-he)  
 some of الكلمات هذه you should be able to  
 recognize already. Ready? Well, before you turn the  
 page it would be a good idea to go back و review all  
 (aar-qaam)  
 your أرقام one more time.  
 numbers

To dial from the United States to any other country أنت need that country's international area  
 (ah-teh-lee-foon) (kee-taab)  
 code. Your كتاب التليفون at home should have a listing of international area codes. When  
 telephone book

Here are some useful words built around the word "تليفون".

- \_\_\_\_\_ operator ..... (moo-ta-ke-lim).....  مُتَكَلِّم
- \_\_\_\_\_ public telephone .. (roo-moo-me)(teh-lee-foon) ..  تليفون عمومي

(ow) (al-oos-ru) (al-ahss-dee-qa) leave your contact numbers **مع الأصدقاء** ← business colleagues, أنت should include your destination country's area code **والأسرة أو** family friends **و** city code whenever possible. For example,



Country Codes		City Codes	
Egypt	20	Cairo	2
Iraq	964	Baghdad	1
Jordan	962	Amman	6
Morocco	212	Rabat	7

When calling from within the country, say from Cairo to Alexandria, or from Casablanca to Rabat, you need to use "0" with the city code. So now **تستطيعين أن** ← use **التليفون** to make a call while traveling abroad. **هناك** ← also more city codes called **رقم المدينة** ← these are listed **في كتاب التليفون** ←

Do not be surprised if your first public telephone does not work. You may need to locate a second one in order to make your call. This can be a common occurrence.

When answering **التليفون** ← pick up the receiver **و** say: **"نعم"** ←

When saying goodbye, أنت say: **"مع السلامة"** ← Your turn —

(goodbye)

(yes)

Do not forget that **أن** ← **تستطيعين أن** ask ...

**بكم المكالمة إلى دمشق؟** ← (deh-mahshk) (ee-la) (al-moo-kaa-la-ma) (be-kem) the call how much

**بكم المكالمة إلى بيروت؟** ← (bay-root) (al-moo-kaa-la-ma) Beirut

- كتاب التليفون** ... telephone book ... (ah-teh-lee-foon)(kee-taab)
- جوار تليفوني** ... phone conversation ... (teh-lee-foo-nee)(Heh-waar)
- مكالمة** ... call ... (moo-kaa-la-ma)

هنا some sample sentences for the telephone. Write them in the blanks أسفل.

أريد أن أتصل بشيكاغو. (be-she-kaa-goo) (aht-ta-ssee-la) (ahn) (oo-ree-do) Chicago I phone I want

أريد أن أتصل بالخطوط الجوية المغربية. (al-ma-gree-be-ya) (al-zha-we-ya) (bil-hoo-tooT) (aht-ta-ssee-la) (oo-ree-do) Maroc airline

أريد أن أتصل بمكتب الإرشادات. (al-ir-sheh-daat) (be-mahk-tahb) (aht-ta-ssee-la) information

ما هو رقم التليفون؟ (ah-teh-lee-foon) (rahq-m) (hoo-wa) (maa) number (is) what

رقم التليفون هو: ٢٦-٨٧-٢٦. (hoo-wa) (ah-teh-lee-foon) (rahq-m) number

ما هو رقم تليفون الفندق؟ (al-foon-dooq) (teh-lee-foon) (rahq-m) (hoo-wa) (of) the hotel number

نعم أريد أن أتكلم مع السيد لطيف من فضلك. (nah-ahm) (aH-mahd) (fahD-lik) (la-teeF) (ah-ny-yed) (ah-ta-keL-la-ma) I speak Mr. Latif

لحظة من فضلك، الخط مشغول. (mahsh-rool) (al-hahT) (laH-Da) (sek-ree-tair-ah) busy the line just a moment secretary

مرة أخرى من فضلك، أعيدني ببطء من فضلك. (ook-ra) (mar-ra) (aH-mahd) (fahD-lik) (be-booT) (ah-ree-dee) more once slowly repeat (#)

سيكرتيرة: الخط مشغول. (mahsh-rool) (al-hahT) (sek-ree-tair-ah)

شكراً جزيلاً مع السلامة. (ah-sa-laa-ma) (mar) (sha-zee-lahn) (shook-rahn) (aH-mahd) very much

الآن, you are ready to use any تليفون from Cairo to Dubai. Just speak slowly و clearly.

- الشُرطة police ..... (ah-shoor-Ta) .....
الإسعاف first aid ..... (al-ees-aaf) .....
الحريق fire brigade ..... (al-Ha-reeq) .....

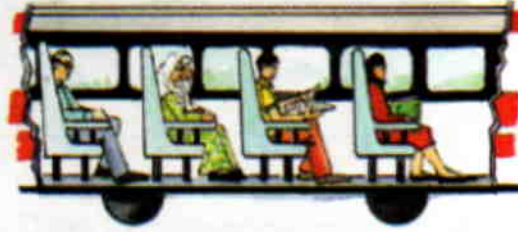
(taak-see) تاكسي taxi - (qee-Taar) قطار train - (Haa-fee-la) حافلة bus

In most Arabic-speaking countries, people <sup>(bih-taak-see)</sup> بالتاكسي <sup>(bih-sy-yaa-ra)</sup> بالسيارة أو <sup>(bil-Haa-fee-la)</sup> بالحافلة <sup>(oo-seh-fee-roo-na)</sup> يسافرون <sup>travel</sup> ←

Keep in mind, the buses can be very crowded.



(qee-Taar) قطار train



(Haa-fee-la) حافلة bus



(taak-see) تاكسي taxi



(al-Haa-fee-laat) الحافلات ← (ma-HahT-Taht) مَحطة bus stop

Don't forget, you can always, hail a <sup>(taak-see)</sup> تاكسي <sup>(ah-shah-re')</sup> on الشارع as well.

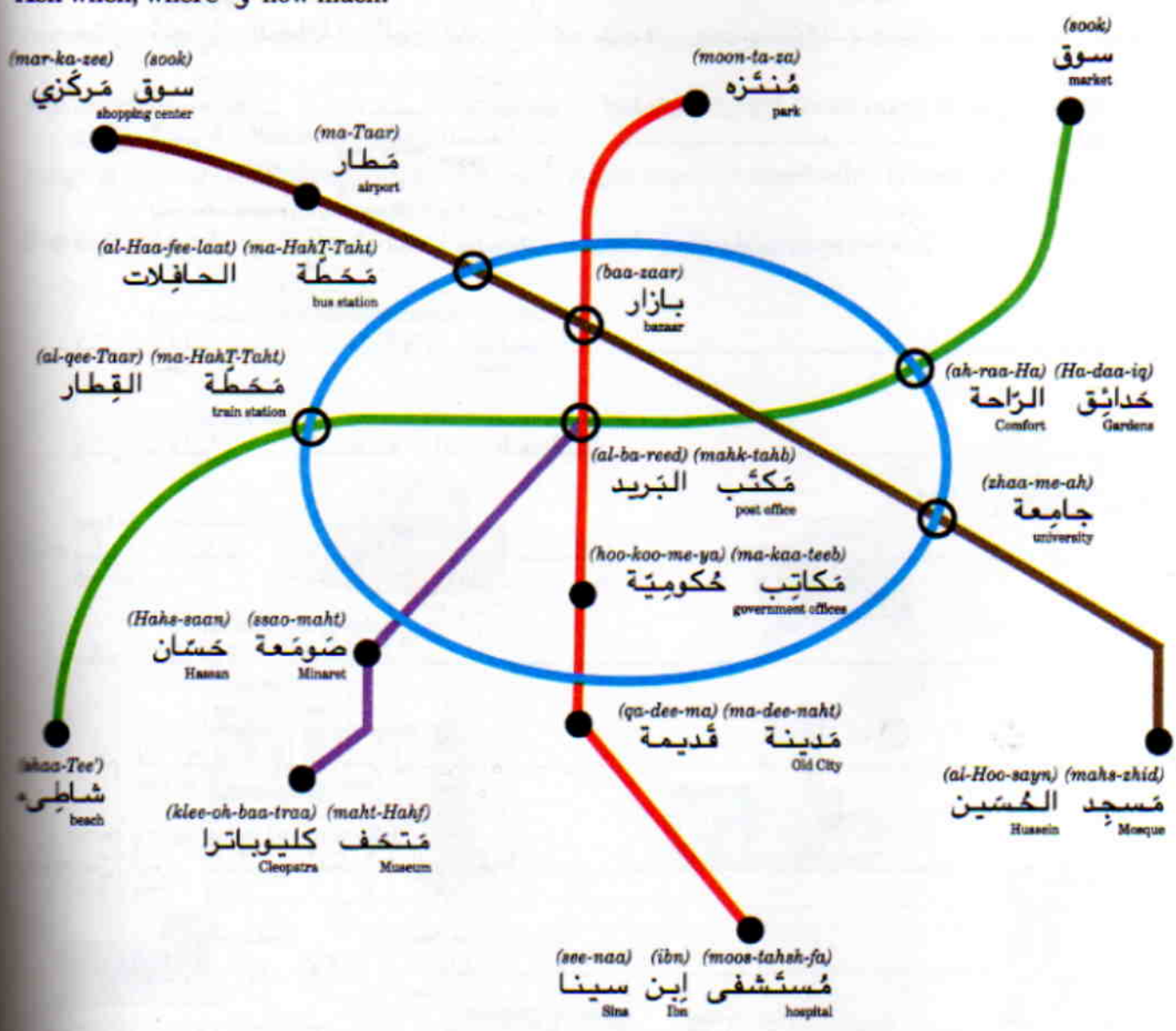
Other than having foreign words, the bus systems in Beirut أو Tunis function just like those in San Francisco, New York أو Boston. Locate your destination, select the correct line on your practice <sup>(Haa-fee-la)</sup> حافلة ← hop on board.

_____	to give ..... (ma-na-Ha) ..... مَنَحْ ← <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	scholarship ..... (meen-Ha) ..... مَنَحَة <input type="checkbox"/>
_____	grant ..... (meen-Ha) ..... مَنَحَة <input type="checkbox"/>



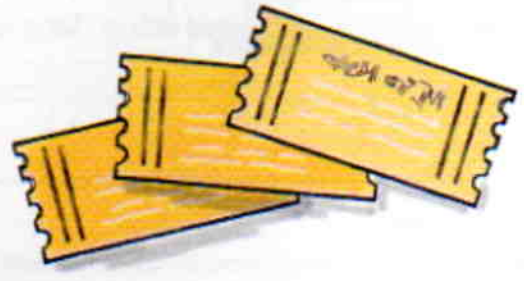
(ahs-fahl) (ha-ree-Ta) أسفل is an imaginary خريطة which gives you a chance to practice key كلمات which can be found in most cities. Ready? Start at the post office وَ practice traveling to all the destinations.

Ask when, where وَ how much!



Practice these questions aloud many times.

(al-Haa-fee-laah) (ma-HahT-Taht) (eye-na) أين مَحْطَة الحافلات؟ station where (is)  
 (ah-taak-see) أين مَحْطَة التاكسي؟  
 (al-gee-Taar) أين مَحْطَة القطار؟



_____	مَنْح	donation..... (menH) .....	<input type="checkbox"/>
_____	مَنْح	donator (人)..... (men-eH).....	<input type="checkbox"/>
_____	مَنْح	donator (人)..... (men-ee-Ha) .....	<input type="checkbox"/>

Practice the following basic <sup>(as-ee-la)</sup> أسئلة out loud <sup>(al-ya-saar)</sup> وَ then write them in the blanks <sup>(ah-la)</sup> عَلَى الْيَسَارِ

\_\_\_\_\_ 1. مَتَى تَجِيءُ الْحَافِلَةُ إِلَى تُونِسْ؟  
(too-nooa) (ee-la) (al-Haa-fee-la) (ta-zhee-oo) (meh-ta)  
Tunis comes when

\_\_\_\_\_ مَتَى تَجِيءُ الْحَافِلَةُ إِلَى فَاسْ؟  
(fes) (ta-zhee-oo)  
Fes comes

\_\_\_\_\_ مَتَى تَجِيءُ الْحَافِلَةُ إِلَى الْمَطَارِ؟  
(al-ma-Taar) (ta-zhee-oo)  
airport

\_\_\_\_\_ 2. مَتَى يُغَادِرُ الْقِطَارُ؟  
(al-qee-Taar) (yoo-raa-dee-roo)  
the train leaves

\_\_\_\_\_ مَتَى تُغَادِرُ الْحَافِلَةُ؟  
(al-Haa-fee-la) (too-raa-dee-roo)  
leaves

\_\_\_\_\_ مَتَى تُغَادِرُ الْحَافِلَةُ إِلَى الْجَزَائِرِ؟  
(al-zeh-zair-ir) (too-raa-dee-roo)

\_\_\_\_\_ 3. بِكَمْ تَذِكِرَةُ الْحَافِلَةُ؟  
(al-Haa-fee-la) (teth-kee-ra) (be-kem)  
(of) the bus ticket how much

\_\_\_\_\_ بِكَمْ تَذِكِرَةُ الْقِطَارِ؟  
(al-qee-Taar) (teth-kee-ra)  
(of) the train

\_\_\_\_\_ بِكَمْ التُّذِكِرَةُ إِلَى أَسْوَانَ؟  
(aks-won) (ah-teth-kee-ra)  
Aswan the ticket

\_\_\_\_\_ 4. مِنْ أَيْنَ أَشْتَرِي تَذِكِرَةَ الْحَافِلَةَ؟  
(teth-kee-ra) (esh-ta-ree) (eye-na) (min)  
do I buy where from

\_\_\_\_\_ مِنْ أَيْنَ أَشْتَرِي تَذِكِرَةَ الْقِطَارِ؟  
(al-qee-Taar) (esh-ta-ree)  
train

Let's change directions <sup>(tha-laa-tha)</sup> وَ learn <sup>(ta-ree-foo)</sup> ثَلَاثَةَ new verbs. <sup>(ah-la)</sup> حَصَلَ عَلَيَّ the basic "plug-in" formula, so

write out your own sentences using these new verbs.

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(ar-see-loo)</sup> أَسْبَلُ  
I wash

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(yek-hoo-doo)</sup> يَأْخُذُ  
it takes

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(ahf-ah-loo)</sup> أَفْعَلُ  
I do

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(ah-la)</sup> حَصَلَ عَلَيَّ to obtain .. (Ha-ssa-la) .. □

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(moo-Ha-ssil)</sup> مُحْمِلٌ tax collector ... □

\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(maH-ssool)</sup> مَحْصُولٌ harvest / result ... □

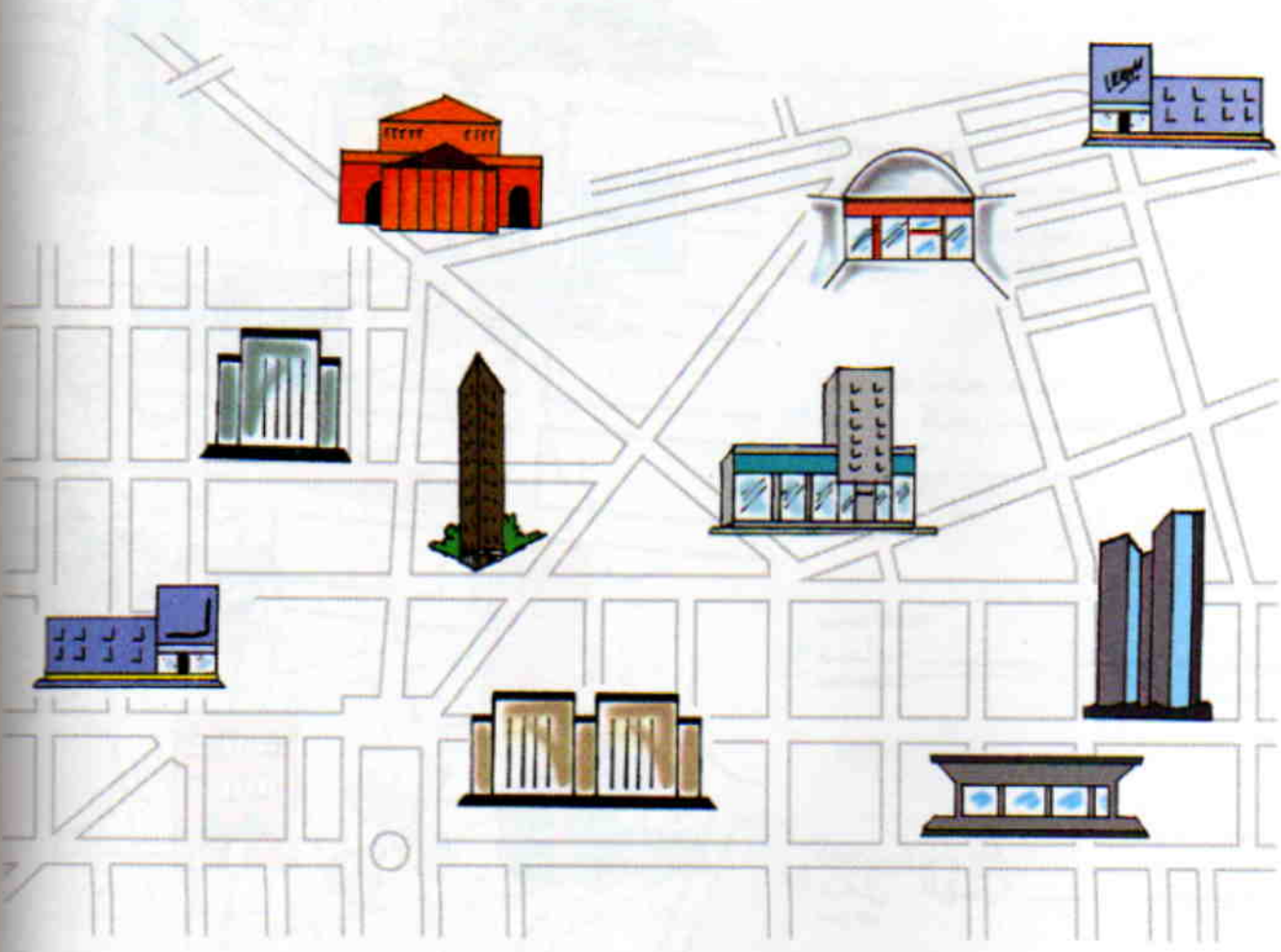
أشترى و أبيع  
 (ah-be-roo) I sell      (ash-ta-ree) I buy

Shopping abroad is exciting. The simple everyday task of buying <sup>(loof-faa-Ha)</sup> لَبْر ماء أو تَفَاحَة <sup>(maa') (lee-tair)</sup> becomes a challenge that <sup>(al-ann)</sup> أنت should الآن be able to meet quickly و easily. Of course, أنت

will purchase <sup>(teth-kaar)</sup> تَذْكَار <sup>(be-Taa-qaat)</sup> بِطَاقَات و <sup>(Ta-waa-bihh)</sup> طَوَاحِ، but don't forget those many other <sup>(al-eh-shee')</sup> الأَشْيَاء ranging from shoelaces to <sup>(ahq-raasa)</sup> أَقْرَاص that أنت might need unexpectedly. Locate your store, draw a line to it و as always, write your <sup>(sha-dee-da)</sup> كَلِمَات جَدِيدَة in the blanks provided.

<sup>(tee-zhaa-ree-ya)</sup> مَحَلَّات تِجَارِيَّة <sup>(ma-Ha-laat)</sup>  
 department stores

<sup>(see-neh-maa)</sup> سِينَمَا  
 cinema



<sup>(al-ba-veed)</sup> مَكْتَبُ الْبَرِيدِ <sup>(mahk-tahb)</sup>  
 post office

<sup>(bahnk)</sup> بَنْك  
 bank

<sup>(foon-dooq)</sup> فَنْدُق  
 hotel

<sup>(al-ben-zeen)</sup> مَحْطَة الْبَنْزِينِ <sup>(ma-HakT-Taht)</sup>  
 gas station

(min) (mef-too-Ha) (al-ma-Ha-laat)

المخلات مفتوحة من

from open the stores

(al-ha-meex) (al-ah-Hahd)

الأحد إلى الخميس

Thursday Sunday

(al-zahz-zair)

الجزار

butcher shop

(al-mahk-ta-ba)

المكتبة

bookstore

(mahss-ba-na)

مصبنة

dry cleaners

(ah-sy-da-lee-ya)

الصيدلية

pharmacy

(al-ma-HahT-Ta)

المخطة

parking lot (station)

(al-zha-raa-id) (ma-Hahl)

محل الجرائد

newspaper kiosk

(maH-la-ba)

محلبة

delicatessen

(al-ha-dair-ya) (ma-Hahl)

محل الهدايا

gift store

(sook) (be-haa) (qar-ya) (meh-dee-na) (kool-ipo)

كل مدينة و قرية بها سوق

(a) market has village town every

(sa-far) (mahk-tahb)

مكتب سفر

travel agency

(ah-shoor-Ta)

الشرطة

police station

Start your shopping list now!

(al-Ha-lao-we-yet) (ma-Hahl) ←  
**مَحلّ الخَلَوِيّات**  
 candy store

(ah-zoo-hoor) (ma-Hahl) ←  
**مَحلّ الزّهور**  
 flower shop

(ah-sa-makk) (sook) ←  
**سوق السَمَك**  
 fish market

(ah-tahss-wair) (ma-Hahl) ←  
**مَحلّ التّصوير**  
 camera shop

(sook) ←  
**سوق**  
 market

(dook-ken) ←  
**دُكان**  
 grocery store / groingrocer

(al-moo-zhao-ha-ret) (maht-zhar) ←  
**مَتَجَر المَجوهرات**  
 jewelry store

(mahk-beh-za) ←  
**مخبِزة**  
 bakery

(mahq-ha) ←  
**مقهى**  
 coffee house / caff

(mahss-ba-na) ←  
**مصبِنة**  
 laundry

(hy-yaa-Ta) (hy-yaaT) ←  
**خَيّاط / خَيّاطة**  
 tailor

(Ha-laa-qa) (Ha-laaq) ←  
**خلاق / خالقة**  
 hairdresser barber

(al-ar-Dee) (ah-Taa-bahq) ← = ground floor  
**الطابق الأرضي**

(ah-ow-wel) (ah-Taa-bahq) ← = first floor  
**الطابق الأول**

(ah-thaa-nee) (ah-Taa-bahq) ← = second floor  
**الطابق الثاني**

At this point, أنتِ should just about be ready for your <sup>(sa-far)</sup>سَفَرٍ. أنتِ have gone shopping for those last-minute odds 'n ends. Most likely, the store directories at your local <sup>(tee-zhaa-ree-ya) (ma-Ha-laat)</sup>مَحَلَّاتِ تِجَارِيَّةٍ department stores do not look like the one <sup>(ahs-fahl)</sup>أَسْفَلِ. <sup>(ta-ree-fee-na)</sup>تَعْرِفِينَ that <sup>(al-ahT-faai)</sup>الأطفال is Arabic for "children," so if <sup>(taH-teh-zhee-na)</sup>تَحْتَاجِينَ إلى something for a child you would probably look on <sup>(ah-thaa-nee) (ah-Taa-bahq)</sup>الطابقِ الثَّانِيِ the second floor wouldn't you?

كريستال أسيرة أعطية	أدوات مُلَمَّع	الخَرْف البِلُّور أواني	4.
كمبيوترات تَلْفُزَات	مَذاييع آلات موسيقيَّة مَحْطَة	مَطْعَم جرائد مَجَلَّات	3.
مَلايِس الأَطْفال مَلايِس النِّساء	مَلايِس الرِّجال مَلايِس الرُّضْع آلة التَّصوير	مَوادَّ التَّجْميل أَثاث سَجَّادات	2.
مُعِدَّات السَّيَّارة مَلايِس داخِليَّة مَفاتيح	مَلايِس سِباحة أحذية كُتُب	مُعِدَّات سَجائِر مَخْبِزَة	1.
خُرَاط قُبَّعات مُجوهرات	جِلد جِوارِب أحزمة	ساعات عِطْر مَقهى	0.

Let's start a checklist for your <sup>(sa-far)</sup>سَفَرٍ. Besides clothing, <sup>(taH-teh-zhee-na) (may-daa)</sup>ماذا <sup>(ahs-fahl)</sup>تَحْتَاجِينَ؟ As you learn these words, assemble these items in <sup>(zair-see-ah)</sup>زاوية of your <sup>(bait)</sup>بَيْتِ. Check <sup>(ah-thaa-nee) (ah-Taa-bahq)</sup>و make sure that they are clean <sup>(sa-far)</sup>و ready for your سَفَرٍ. Be sure to do the same <sup>(ah-thaa-nee) (ah-Taa-bahq)</sup>مَعَ the rest of the clothing that أنتِ pack. On the next pages, match each item to its picture, draw a line to it and write out the word many times. As you organize these things, check them off on this list. Do not forget to take the

102 next group of sticky labels and label these things <sup>(al-yohm)</sup>اليَوْمِ.

فُلوس فُلوس فُلوس



(sa-far) (zhao-wez)

جَوَاز سَفَرٍ  
passport

(teth-kee-ra)

تَذَكِّرة  
ticket

(Ha-qee-ba)

حَقِيبة  
suitcase



(yed) (Ha-qee-bet)

حَقِيبة يَد  
handbag

(mehH-fa-Tha)

مَحْفَظَة  
wallet

(foo-loos)

فُلوس  
money



(bahn-kee-ya) (be-Taa-qaht)

بَطَاقَة بَنْكِيَّة  
credit card

(sa-far) (shee-ket)

شِيكات سَفَرٍ  
traveler's checks



(tahss-wair) (aa-lit)

آلة تَصْوِير  
camera

(feelm)

فِيْلِم  
film



(see-baa-Ha) (leh-bes)

لِبَاس سِبَاحَة  
swimsuit

(nah)

نُعْل  
sandals / slippers

(shem-see-ya) (naTh-Thaa-ya)

نَظَّارة شَمْسِيَّة  
sunglasses

(foor-shet)

فُرْشَة  
toothbrush



(al-es-naqn) (ma-zhoon)

مَعْجُون الأَسْنَان  
toothpaste



(ssaa-boon)

صَابُون  
soap

(shahf-ra)

شَفْرَة  
razor



(Teeb)

طِيب  
deodorant

(reh-Tur)

عَطْر  
perfume



\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

خُفَّاز خُفَّاز خُفَّاز خُفَّاز

(meshT) مشط  
comb

(meer-Tahf) مِعْطَف  
overcoat / raincoat

(me-Thahl-ia) مِظَلَّة  
umbrella

(foos-ten) فُسْتَان  
dress

(qa-meess) قَمِيص  
sweater

(soot-ra) سُوْتْرَة  
blouse

(tahn-noo-ra) (thohb) ثَوْب / ثَوْرَة  
skirt

(He-dair') حِذَاء  
shoes

(ree-yaa-Da) (He-dair') حِذَاء رِيَاضَة  
tennis shoes

(hoof-fez) حُفَّاز  
gloves

(qoob-ba) قُبْعَة  
hat

(beed-la) بَدَلَة  
suit

(rahb-Ta) رِبْطَة  
tie

(qa-meess) قَمِيص  
shirt / T-shirt

(min-deel) مِندِيل  
handkerchief

(soot-ra) سُوْتْرَة  
jacket / blazer

(seer-iceel) سِرْوَال  
trousers / jeans / shorts

(zheenz) "نَجِينز"  
jeans

(short) "شُورْت"  
shorts



(bi-r-ra-be-ya)

بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ the phrase

(daak-he-lee-ya) (meh-leh-bee)

مَلَابِسٌ دَاخِلِيَّةٌ

tends to refer to a variety of undergarments for

both men و women.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



(daak-he-lee-ya) (meh-leh-bee)

مَلَابِسٌ دَاخِلِيَّةٌ  
underclothing

(zha-wear-rib)

جَوَارِبُ  
socks

(nouw) (meh-leh-bee)

مَلَابِسٌ نَوْمٍ  
pajamas

(Hahm-maam) (thohb)

ثَوْبٌ حَقَامٌ  
bathrobe

(meh-leh-bee)

So أَنْتِ have assembled your مَلَابِسٌ. Here are some clothing items which أَنْتِ might

encounter on your سَفَرٍ. أَنْتِ will hear a variety of words for these items.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



(koo-fee-ya)

كُوفِيَّةٌ  
men's head covering

(thohb)

ثَوْبٌ  
men's wrap to hold the head covering

(He-zhaab)

حِجَابٌ  
veil

(ah-by-ya)

عَبَايَةٌ  
women's long-sleeved outer garment

(zhil-beb)

جَلْبَابٌ  
women's long-sleeved outer garment

(kahf-Taam)

قَفْطَانٌ  
women's long-sleeved outer garment

(zhil-beb)

جَلْبَابٌ  
men's long, shirt-like garment

(boor-nook)

بُورْنُوسٌ  
burnous

(saa-boon)

From now on, أَنْتِ have "صابون" and not "soap." Having assembled these الأشياء you are

ready for your سَفَرٍ. Let's add these important shopping phrases to your basic repertoire.

\_\_\_\_\_  أَيُّ قِيَاسٍ؟  
size which

\_\_\_\_\_  هَذَا قِيَاسُكَ.  
this fits

\_\_\_\_\_  لَيْسَ قِيَاسُكَ.  
it does not fit

Treat yourself to a final review. <sup>(al-ahs-maa')</sup> <sup>(al-ma-Ha-laat)</sup> أنتِ know <sup>the names</sup> الأسماء for <sup>the stores</sup> المَحَلَّاتِ, so let's practice shopping.

Just remember your basic <sup>(es-ee-la)</sup> أسئلة <sup>questions</sup> that you learned in Step 2. Whether <sup>(ahq-raas)</sup> أنتِ need to buy <sup>apple</sup> قِراص or <sup>(toof-feH)</sup> تفاح <sup>(ka-lee-maat)</sup> the necessary <sup>apples</sup> كَلِمَات are the same.

1. First step — <sup>(eye-na)</sup> أين

<sup>(ah-tahss-wair)</sup> <sup>(ma-Hahl)</sup> <sup>(eye-na)</sup> أين مَحَلُّ التَّصْوِيرِ؟  
the camera shop

<sup>(al-bahnk)</sup> <sup>(eye-na)</sup> أين البَنْك؟

<sup>(ah-see-neh-maa)</sup> <sup>(eye-na)</sup> أين السِّينِمَا؟  
the cinema

(Where is the bakery?)

(Where is the grocery store?)

(Where is the market?)



2. Second step — tell them <sup>(taH-teh-zhee-na)</sup> نَحْتَاجِيْنَ <sup>(too-ree-dee-na)</sup> أَوْ <sup>(may-daa)</sup> مَاذَا <sup>(eye-na)</sup> أين

<sup>(rin-da-ka)</sup> <sup>(hel)</sup> هَلْ عِنْدَكَ...؟  
do you (♠) have

<sup>(rin-da-kee)</sup> <sup>(hel)</sup> هَلْ عِنْدَكَ...؟

<sup>(oo-ree-da)</sup> أَرِيدُ...  
I want

<sup>(ee-la)</sup> <sup>(aH-teh-zhoo)</sup> أحتاجُ إلى...  
I need

(Do you have postcards?)

(I want four stamps, please.)

(I need toothpaste.)

(I want to buy film.)

(Do you have coffee?)



Go through the glossary at the end of <sup>(al-kee-taab) (heh-daa)</sup> **الكتاب** <sup>(ka-lee-maat) ('ah-shar)</sup> **هذا** and select **عَشْرَ كَلِمَاتٍ**. Drill the

above patterns <sup>(al-ka-lee-maat) (heh-da-he)</sup> **الكَلِمَاتِ** <sup>(al-yohm)</sup> **مَعَ هَذِهِ**. Drill them <sup>(ah-shar) ten</sup> **اليَوْمِ**. Now, take **عَشْرَ** more

**كَلِمَاتٍ** from your glossary **وَ** do the same.

3. Third step — find out <sup>(be-kem)</sup> **بِكَمْ**  
how much

<sup>(ah-Taa-bahh) (be-kem)</sup> **بِكَمْ الطَّابِعُ؟** ←  
the stamp

<sup>(toof-feH) (kee-loo) (be-kem)</sup> **بِكَمْ كِيلُو تَفَاحٍ؟** ←  
apples a kilo

<sup>(be-kem)</sup> **بِكَمْ؟** ←

(How much is the toothpaste?)

(How much is the soap?)

(How much is a cup of tea?)



4. Fourth step — success! I found it!

Once <sup>(too-ree-dee-na)</sup> **أنتِ** find what **تُرِيدِينَ** - say,  
you (\$) want

<sup>(fahD-lik) (min) (heh-daa) (oo-ree-da)</sup> **أُرِيدُ هَذَا مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.** ←  
(#) this (#)

<sup>(fahD-lik) (min) (heh-da-he) (oo-ree-da)</sup> **أُرِيدُ هَذِهِ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ.** ←  
this (#)

Or, if **أنتِ** would not like it,

<sup>(shook-rahn) (heh-daa) (oo-ree-da) (la)</sup> **لَا أُرِيدُ هَذَا شُكْرًا.** ←  
I do not want

or

<sup>(shook-rahn) (la)</sup> **لَا شُكْرًا.** ←  
thank you no

<sup>(ma-brook)</sup> **مَبْرُوكٌ!**  
congratulations

You have finished. By now you should have stuck your labels, flashed your cards, cut

out your menu guide and packed your suitcases. You should be very pleased with your

accomplishment. You have learned what it sometimes takes others years to achieve and you

hopefully had fun doing it.

<sup>(sy-yeed) (sa-far)</sup> **سَفَرٌ سَعِيدٌ!**  
Have a good trip!

# Glossary

This glossary contains words used in this book only. It is not meant to be a dictionary. Consider purchasing a dictionary which best suits your needs - small for traveling, large for reference, or specialized for specific vocabulary needs.

## A

a little.....	(shway-yeh) شوي / (qa-lee-lahn) قليلاً
a lot.....	(ka-thee-rahm) كثيراً
about.....	(rahn) عن
address (the).....	(al-room-wen) العنوان
after.....	(ba-da) بعد
afternoon.....	(ah-Doo-hur) (ba-da) بعد الظهر
air.....	(zhao) جو
airline..	(al-zha-we-ya)(al-hoo-TooT) الخطوط الجوية
airplane.....	(Taa-ee-ra) طائرة
airport.....	(ma-Taar) مطار
alarm clock.....	(saa-ra) ساعة
Algeria.....	(al-zeh-zair-ir) الجزائر
also.....	(eye-Dahn) أيضاً
am not.....	(les-too) لست
America.....	(ahm-ree-kaa) أمريكا
American (\$).....	(ahm-ree-kee-ya) أمريكية
American (¤).....	(ahm-ree-kee) أمريكي
and.....	(wa) و
answer (the).....	(al-zha-web) الجواب
apartment.....	(shooq-qa) شقة
appetizers.....	(moo-qa-be-let) مقبلات
apple.....	(toof-faa-Ha) تفاحة
apples.....	(toof-feH) تفاح
appliances.....	أدوات
apricots.....	(meesh-meesh) مشمش
April.....	(ah-breel) أبريل
Arabic.....	(r-ra-be-ya) عربية
Arabic (the).....	(al-r-ra-be-ya) العربية
arrival.....	(woo-ssool) وصول
aspirin.....	(ahq-raass) أقراص
at.....	(fee) في
August.....	(rohsht) أغسطس
aunt (maternal).....	(khaa-ia) خالة
Australia.....	(oos-too-raa-lee-ya) أستراليا
Australian (\$).....	(oos-too-raa-lee-ya) أسترالية
Australian (¤).....	(oos-too-raa-lee) أسترالي
auto accessories.....	معدات السيارة

## B

baby department.....	ملايس الرضيع
bad.....	(sy-yeh') سيء

bad (grades).....	(Dy-eef) ضعیف
bad (weather).....	(ra-dee') رديء
bakery.....	(mahk-beh-za) مخبزة
bank.....	(bahnk) بنك
barber.....	(Ha-laaq) خلاق
basement.....	(ka-boo) قبو
bathrobe.....	(Hahm-maam)(thohb) ثوب حمام
bathroom / toilet.....	(Hahm-maam) حمام
bazaar.....	(baa-zaar) بازار
beach.....	(shaa-Tee') شاطئ
bed.....	(sa-reer) سرير
bed linens.....	(ree-Ta') غطاء
bedroom.....	(ah-noum)(roor-fa) غرفة النوم
beds.....	أسرة
before.....	(qahb-la) قبل
behind.....	(wa-raa-ah) وراء
behind.....	(hahl-fa) خلف
below.....	(ahs-fahl) أسفل
belts.....	أحزمة
between.....	(by-na) بين
beverages.....	(mahsh-roo-baat) مشروبات
bicycle.....	(dar-raa-zha) دراجة
big, old.....	(ka-beer) كبير
bill.....	(Heh-saab) حساب
bills (currency), money.....	(foo-loos) فلوس
black.....	(ahs-wed) أسود
blouse.....	(soot-ra) شتره
blue.....	(ahz-rahq) أزرق
book.....	(kee-taab) كتاب
books.....	(koo-toob) كتب
bookstore.....	(al-mahk-ta-ba) المكتبة
bread.....	(hoobz) خبز
breakfast.....	(al-foo-Toor) الفطور
brother.....	(ahk) أخ
brown.....	(boon-nee) بني
bus.....	(Haa-fee-la) حافلة
bus (the).....	(al-oo-too-bees) لأتوبيس
bus station / stop.....	خطة الحافلات (al-Haa-fee-laat)(ma-HahT-Taht)
but.....	(la-kin) لكن
butcher shop.....	(al-zhahz-zair) جزار
butter.....	(zoob-da) سدة

by airmail... (al-zhao-we)(bil-ba-reed) بِالْبَرِيدِ الْجَوِّي  
by boat... (bil-bear-he-ra) بِالْبَاحِرَةِ

## C

café..... (mahq-ha) مَقْهَى  
cafeteria..... (kaa-fee-tair-ree-aa) كَافِيْتِيرِيَا  
calendar (the)..... (ah-ta-queem) التَّقْوِيم  
call (the)..... (al-moo-kaa-la-ma) التَّكَلُّمَة  
camel..... (zha-mel) جَمَل  
camera..... (tahss-wair) (aa-lit) آلة تَصْوِير  
camera shop.....  
..... (ah-tahss-wair)(ma-Hahl) مَحَلُّ التَّصْوِير  
Canada..... (ka-na-daa) كَنَدَا  
candy store.....  
..... (al-Ha-lao-we-yet)(ma-Hahl) مَحَلُّ الخَلْوِيَّات  
car..... (sy-yaa-ra) سَيَّارَة  
carpet..... (sahzh-zheh-da) سَجَادَة  
cashier (the)..... (ah-ssoon-dooq) الصَّنْدُوق  
cat..... (keT-Ta) قِطَّة  
ceramics..... الخَزْف  
chair..... (koor-see) كُرْسِي  
cheap..... (ra-keess) رَخِيص  
cheese..... (zhoob-na) جُبْنَة  
children (the)..... (al-ahT-faal) الأَطْفَال  
children's clothing..... مَلَابِيس الأَطْفَال  
Christian (♠)..... (meh-see-He-ya) مَسِيحِيَّة  
Christian (♠)..... (meh-see-He) مَسِيحِي  
church..... (ka-nee-sa) كَنِيسَة  
cinema..... (see-neh-maa) سِينَمَا  
city, town..... (meh-dee-na) مَدِينَة  
city codes... (al-meh-dee-na) (rahq-m) رَقْم المَدِينَة  
class (the)..... (ah-ssahf) الصَّفَّ  
clock, alarm clock..... (saa-ra) سَاعَة  
closed..... (moog-lahq) مُغْلَق  
closet, wardrobe, cupboard..... (hee-zaa-na) خَزَانَة  
clothing..... (meh-leh-bes) مَلَابِيس  
cloudy..... (raa-im) غَائِم  
coffee..... (qah-wa) قَهْوَة  
coffee house / café..... (mahq-ha) مَقْهَى  
coffee set.....  
إبريق قَهْوَة وَ كُؤُوس (koo-oos)(wa)(qa-wa)(ee-breeq)  
coins..... (nahq-dee-ya) (qeh-Tar) قِطْع نَقْدِيَّة  
cold..... (bear-id) بَارِد  
colorful..... (moo-la-wen) مُلَوَّن  
colors (the)..... (ahl-wen) الأَلْوَان  
comb..... (meshT) مِشْط

computer..... (kohm-boo-tair) كَمْبِيُوتَر  
concert (the).....  
..... (moo-see-gee-ya)(Hahf-la) حَفْلَة مُوسِيقِيَّة  
congratulations..... (ma-brook) مَبْرُوك  
conversations (the)..... (al-He-waa-raat) الجَوَارَات  
corner (the)..... (al-zair-we-ya) الزَّوَايَة  
cosmetics..... مَوَادِّ التَّجْمِيل  
counter..... (shoob-bek) شُبَّاك  
country..... (ba-lahd) بَلَد  
credit card.....  
..... (bahn-kee-ya) (be-Taa-qaht) بِطَاقَة بَنَكِيَّة  
crystal..... كَرِيْسْتَال  
cucumbers..... (he-yaar) خِيَار  
cup..... (feen-zhaan) فِينْجَان  
curtain..... (see-taa-ra) سِتَّارَة

## D

dad..... (ahb) أَب  
daughter..... (bint) بِنْت / (ib-na) ابْنَة  
day..... (yohm) يَوْم  
December..... (dee-sem-br) دِيْسَمْبَر  
decorative arts / ornamentation.. (za-haa-rif) زَخَارِف  
delicatessen, creamery..... (maH-la-ba) مَحَلِّيَّة  
deodorant..... (Teeb) طَيْب  
department stores.....  
..... (tee-zhaa-ree-ya) (ma-Ha-laat) مَحَلَّاتِ بَاجَارِيَّة  
departure..... (da-haab) نَهَاب  
desk..... (mahk-tahb) مَكْتَب  
dessert, little sweets..... (Hel-wa) خَلْوَى  
dictionary..... (qaa-moos) قَامُوس  
dinars..... (dee-naar) دِينَار  
dining room..... (L-ah-kel) (bait) بَيْت الأَكْل  
dinner..... (ay-shaa) عِشَاء  
dirhams..... (deh-raa-him) دِرَاهِم  
dishes..... أَوَانِي  
Do you have (♠)?..... (rin-da-kee)(hel) هَلْ عِنْدَكَ  
Do you have (♠)?..... (rin-da-ka)(hel) هَلْ عِنْدَكَ  
doctor (the)..... (ah-dook-toor) الدُّكْتُور  
dog..... (kelb) كَلْب  
Dome of the Rock (the).....  
..... (ah-ssahk-ra)(qoob-baht) قُبَّة الصَّخْرَة  
domestic..... (ma-Hahl-lee) مَحَلِّي  
door..... (baab) بَاب  
downstairs (the).....  
..... (ah-soo-flee)(ah-Taa-bahq) الطَّابِق السُّفْلِي  
dress..... (foos-ten) فُسْتَان  
dry cleaners, laundry..... (mahss-ba-na) مَحْبِنَة 109

## E

east.....	(ah-shark) الشَّرْق
eggs.....	(by-eD) بَيْض
Egypt.....	(meess-ur) مِصْر
eight.....	(tha-maa-nee-ya) ثَمَانِيَة
eight (o'clock).....	(ah-thaa-me-na) الثَّامِنَة
eighteen.. ('ah-shar)(tha-maa-nee-ya)	ثَمَانِيَة عَشْر
eighty.....	(tha-maa-noon) ثَمَانُونَ
eleven.....	('ah-shar)(ah-Hahd) أَحَدُ عَشْر
email.....	(ee-mail) إِيْمِيل
England.....	(in-zhla-tair-raa) إِنْجِلْتْرَا
English (language)....	(al-in-zhlee-zee-ya) الْإِنْجِلِيزِيَّة
English (♣).....	(in-zhlee-zee-ya) إِنْجِلِيزِيَّة
English (♠).....	(in-zhlee-zee) إِنْجِلِيزِي
enjoy your meal / excellent meal .....	وَجِبَة طَيِّبَة (Ty-yee-ba) (wehzh-ba)
entrance.....	(dook-hool) دُخُول
evening (the).....	(al-ma-saa') الْمَسَاء
evenings / in the evening.....	(ma-saa-ahn) مَسَاء
every.....	(kool-loo) كُلُّ
everything.....	(shay')(kool) كُلُّ شَيْءٍ
excuse me .....	(mar-dee-ra) مَعْذِرَة
excuse me / I'm sorry / pardon (♣) .....	(eh-sih-fa) أَسِيفَة
excuse me / I'm sorry / pardon (♠).....	(eh-sif) أَسِيف
exit.....	(hoo-roozh) خُرُوج
expensive.....	(tha-meen) غَالِي / (reh-lee) ثَمِين
extended family .....	(aa-ee-la) عَائِلَة
eyeglasses .....	(naTh-Thaa-ra) نَظَّارَة

## F

falafel.....	(fa-laa-fel) فَلَاْفِل
fall (the).....	(al-ha-reef) الْحَرِيف
family.....	(oos-ra) أُسْرَة
fast.....	(sa-reer) سَرِيع
father.....	(weh-lid) وَاِد
fax.....	(faaks) فَاكْس
February.....	(feh-bry-yar) فِبرَايِر
fifteen.....	('ah-shar) (hahm-sa) خَمْسَة عَشْر
fifty.. (hahm-seen) / (hahm-soon)	خَمْسُونَ / خَمْسِين
film, movie.....	(feelm) فِيلْم
first floor ... (ah-ow-wel)(ah-Taa-bahq)	الطَّابِقُ الْأَوَّل
fish.....	(sa-mahk) سَمَك
fish market.....	(ah-sa-mahk) (sook) سَوْقُ السَّمَك
five.....	(hahm-sa) خَمْسَة
five hundred.....	(hahm-soo-me-ya) خَمْسِمِئَة
flight.....	(Ta-ya-raan) طَيَّرَان
flower.....	(zah-ra) زَهْرَة

flower shop .. (ah-zoo-hoor)(ma-Hahl)	مَخْلَ الزُّهُور
flowers.....	(zoo-hoor) زُهُور
fork.....	(shoo-ka) شَوْكَة
forty.....	(ar-ba-oon) أَرْبَعُونَ
four.....	(ar-ba-ah) أَرْبَعَة
fourteen..... ('ah-shar) (ar-ba-ah)	أَرْبَعَة عَشْر
France.....	(fa-rahn-saa) فَرَنْسَا
free, available.....	(sheh-rir) شَاغِر
French.....	(al-fa-rahn-see-ya) الْفَرَنْسِيَّة
Friday.....	(al-zhoo-moo-ah) الْجُمُعَة
friend (♣).....	(ssa-deeq) صَنْدِيق
friends (the)..... (al-ahss-dee-qa)	الْأَصْدِقَاء
from.....	(min) مِنْ
fruit.....	(faa-kee-ha) فَلَكَهَة
furniture .....	أَثَاث

## G

garage.....	(ma-raab) مَرَاَب
garden.....	(Ha-dee-qa) حَدِيقَة
gas station.....	مَخَطَة الْبَنْزِين (al-ben-zeen) (ma-HahT-Taht)
gentlemen.....	(ah-ree-zhel) الرِّجَال
German.....	(al-ahl-maa-nee-ya) الْأَلْمَانِيَّة
gift store .. (al-ha-dair-yaa) (ma-Hahl)	مَخْلَ الْهَدَايَا
give me.....	(ah-Tee-nee) أَعْطِينِي
glass.....	(kess) كَأْس
gloves.....	(hoof-fez) حَفَاظ
go! (♣).....	(eed-ha-bee) اِتَّقِبِي
go! (♠).....	(eed-hahb) اِتَّقِبْ
good.....	(zhy-yed) جَيِّد
good evening..... (al-hair)(ma-saa')	مَسَاءُ الْخَيْر
good luck..... (sy-yeed) (Hahth)	حَظٌّ سَعِيد
good morning .... (al-hair)(ssa-baaH)	صَبَاحُ الْخَيْر
good night.....	مَسَاءُ الْخَيْر (hair)(ah-la)(tooss-beh-Hoo-na)
goodbye..... (ah-sa-laa-ma) (mar)	مَعَ السَّلَامَة
grandfather.....	(zhed) جَدُّ
grandmother.....	(zhed-da) جَدَّة
grape.....	(ry-nahb) عِنَب
gray.....	(reh-maa-dee) رَافِي
green.....	(ahk-Dar) خَضْر
grocery store / greengrocer .....	(dook-ken) كَتَّان
ground floor .....	الطَّابِقُ الْأَرْضِي (al-ar-Dee)(ah-Taa-bahq)
guesthouse.....	مَسَلَة الضُّيُوف (ah-Doo-yoof)(ssaa-laht)
Gulf (the).....	(al-ha-leezh) الْخَلِيج

## H

hairdresser	(Ha-laa-qa) خالقة
half (time)	(ah-nessf) النصف
handbag	(yed) (Ha-qee-bet) حقيبة يد
handkerchief	(min-deel) منديل
hat	(qoob-ba) قبعة
Have a good trip!	(sy-yeed) (sa-far) سفر سعيد!
he, it (♂)	(hoo-wa) هو
he has	(la-hoo) له
healthy	(sseH-He) صحي
Hebrew	(al-ay-bree-ya) العبرية
hello	(mar-Ha-baa) مرحبا
here	(haa) ها
here (are) / here (is)	(hoo-naa) هنا
home, house	(bait) بيت
horse	(He-ssaan) حصان
hot (food)	(saak-hin) ساخن
hot (weather)	(Har) حار
hotel	(foon-dooq) فندق
hour	(saa-ra) ساعة
house	(bait) بيت
how	(kay-fa) كيف
How are you (♂)?	(Haa-lik)(kay-fa) كيف حالك؟
How are you (♀)?	(Haa-lahk)(kay-fa) كيف حالك؟
how many, how much	(kem) كم
how much (price)	(be-kem) بكم
hummus	(hoom-mooss) حمص
hundred (one)	(me-ya) مئة
hungry	(zhao-aan) جوعان

## I

I	(ah-naa) أنا
I am able to	(ahn) (ahs-ta-Tee-roo) أستطيع أن
I arrive	(ah-ssee-loo) أصيل
I buy	(esh-ta-ree) اشتري
I can	(ahn) (ahs-ta-Tee-roo) أستطيع أن
I come	(ah-zhee-oo) أجيء
I do	(ahf-ah-loo) أفعل
I drink	(ahsh-ra-boo) أشرب
I drive	(ah-soo-qoo) أسوق
I eat	(aa-koo-loo) أكل
I enter	(ahd-hoo-loo) أنخل
I go to	(ee-la)(ahd-ha-boo) أذهب إلى
I have	(lee) لي
I have	(rin-dee) عندي
I know	(ah-ree-foo) أعرف
I learn	(ah-ta-rahl-la-moo) أتعلم

I leave, depart	(oo-raa-dee-roo) أغادر
I live	(es-koo-noo) أسكن
I need	(ee-la)(aH-teh-zhoo) أحتاج إلى
I pack	(aH-zee-moo) أحزم
I pay for	(theh-men)(ahd-fa-roo) أدفع ثمن
I phone	(be)(aht-ta-ssee-loo) أتصل بـ
I read	(ahq-ra-oo) أقرأ
I repeat	(oor-ee-do) أعيد
I reserve	(aH-zhee-zoo) أحجز
I say	(ah-qoo-loo) أقول
I see	(ah-ra) أرى
I sell	(ah-be-roo) أبيع
I send	(oor-see-loo) أرسل
I sleep	(ah-naa-moo) أنام
I speak	(ah-ta-kei-la-moo) أتكلم
I stay	(ahb-qa) أبقى
I study	(ah-droo-soo) أدرس
I travel	(oo-seh-fee-roo) أسافر
I understand	(ahf-ha-moo) أفهم
I visit	(ah-zoo-roo) أزور
I want	(oo-ree-do) أريد
I wash	(ar-see-loo) أغسل
I work	(ah-ma-loo) أعمل
I write	(ahk-too-boo) أكتب
ice cream	(boo-Da) بوظة / (kreem)(ice) آيس كريم
important	(moo-him) مهم
in	(fee) في
in Arabic	(bil-r-ra-be-ya) بالعربية
in English	(bil-een-zhlee-zee-ya) بالإنجليزية
in front of	(ah-maa-ma) أمام
signals a question / no meaning	(hel) ها
information office	مكتب الإرشادات (al-ir-sheh-daat) (mahk-tahb)
international	(raa-la-me) عالمي
into	(ee-la) إلى / (daak-he-la) داخل
Iraq	(al-ee-raaq) العراق
it (♂), she	(he-ah) هي
it (♀), he	(hoo-wa) هو
it is	(in-na-haa) إنها
it must be / I must	(ahn) (yeh-zhee-boo) يجب أن
it takes	(yek-hoo-doo) يأخذ
Italian	(al-ee-Taa-lee-ya) الإيطالية

## J / K

jacket / blazer	(soot-ra) سترة
jam	(moo-rahb-ba) مربى
January	(ya-ny-yar) يناير

jeans.....	(zheenZ)	"جِينز"
jewelry.....	(moo-zhao-ha-ret)	مُجَوِّهَرَات
jewelry store.....	(al-moo-zhao-ha-ret)(maht-zhar)	مَتَجَر المَجَوِّهَرَات
Jordan.....	(al-oor-doon)	الأُرْدُن
juice.....	(ra-sseer)	عَصِير
July.....	(yoo-lee-yoo)	يوليو
June.....	(yoo-nee-yoo)	يونيو
just a minute.....	(laH-Dha)	لَحْظَة
key.....	(mif-tair)	مِفْتَاح
keys.....		مِفْتَاح
kilo.....	(kee-loo)	كِيلُو
kitchen.....	(mahT-bahk)	مَطْبَخ
knife.....	(sik-keen)	سِكِّين
Kuwait.....	(al-koo-wait)	الْكُوَيْت

## L

ladies.....	(ah-nee-seh')	النِّسَاء
lamb.....	(ha-roof)	خُرُوف
lamp.....	(miss-baaH)	مِصْبَاح
large, old.....	(ka-beer)	كَبِير
laundry.....	(mahss-beh-na)	مَصْبِنَة
lavatory (the).....	(al-meer-HaaD)	المِرْحاض
leather goods.....		جِلْد
Lebanon.....	(loob-naan)	لُبْنان
left.....	(ya-saar)	يَسَار
left-luggage office.....	(al-moo-seh-fee-reen)	
	(How-weh-izh)(mahk-tahb)	مَكْتَب خَوَائِج المُسَافِرِين
letter.....	(ree-saa-la)	رِسَالَة
Libya.....	(leeb-yaa)	لِيبِيَا
light snacks.....	(ha-feef) (ah-kel)	أَكْل خَفِيف
lighting.....		مُلْبَع
line (the).....	(al-hahT)	الْحَط
linens.....		أَغْطِيَة
lingerie.....		مَلَابِيس دَاخِلِيَة
liter.....	(lee-tair)	لِتر
living room.....	(L-zhoo-loos) (bait)	بَيْت الجُلُوس
long, tall.....	(Ta-weel)	طَوِيل
luggage cart / trolley.....	(ah-ra-ba)	عَرِيَة
lunch.....	(al-ree-deh')	الغِذَاء

## M

magazine.....	(meh-zhel-la)	مَجَلَة
mail.....	(al-ba-reed)	الْبَرِيد
mailbox.....	(al-ba-reed) (ssoon-dooq)	مُتَدَوِّق البَرِيد
man.....	(ra-zhool)	رَجُل
many.....	(ka-thee-ra)	كَثِيرَة

map.....	(ha-ree-Ta)	خَرِيْطَة
March.....	(maars)	مَارِس
market.....	(sook)	سُوق
May.....	(may)	مَاي
meal.....	(wehzh-ba)	وَجْبَة
meat.....	(laHm)	لَحْم
men's clothing.....		مَلَابِيس الرِّجَال
menu.....	(L-ah-kel) (la-ee-Ha)	لَايْحَة الأَكْل
Middle East (the).....		
	(al-ow-sahT) (ah-shark)	الْشَرْق الأَوْسَط
milk.....	(Ha-leeb)	خَلِيب
minaret.....	(ssao-maht)	مِنَارَة
minus.....	(ee-la)	الْإِ
minute.....	(da-qee-qa)	دَقِيقَة
mirror.....	(mir-et)	مِرَاة
mom.....	(oom)	أُم
Monday.....	(ah-ith-nayn)	الإِثْنَيْن
money.....	(foo-loos)	فُلُوس
months (the).....	(ah-shoo-hoor)	الشُّهُور
more.....	(ahk-thar)	أَكْثَر
morning (the).....	(ah-ssa-baaH)	المُصْبَاح
mornings, in the morning.....	(ssa-baa-Hahn)	صَبَاحاً
Morocco.....	(al-ma-greb)	المَغْرِب
mosque.....	(zhaa-mehh) / (mahs-zhid)	مَسْجِد / جَامِع
mother.....	(weh-lee-da)	وَالِدَة
motorcycle.....	(neh-ree-ah) (dar-raa-zha)	مَوْتَرَايَة نَارِيَة
Mr.....	(sy-yeed)	مَرب
Mrs.....	(sy-yee-da)	مَربَة
museum.....	(maht-Hahf)	مُتَخَف
musical instruments.....		أَلَات مُوسِيقِيَة
Muslim (♠).....	(moos-lee-ma)	مُسْلِمَة
Muslim (♠).....	(moos-lim)	مُسْلِم
my name (is).....	(ees-me)	إِسْمِي

## N

name.....	(eesm)	إِسْم
napkin, handkerchief.....	(min-deel)	مِندِيل
new.....	(zha-deed)	جَدِيد
newspaper.....	(ssa-He-fa) / (zha-ree-da)	مُجَلَّة / جَرِيدَة
newspaper kiosk.....		
	(al-zha-raa-id) (ma-Hahl)	مَخَلَّ الجَرَائِد
next to.....	(be-zhaa-nee-be)	بِجَانِب
nice to meet you.....	(ta-shar-rahf-naa)	شَرَّفْنَا
night (the).....	(ah-lail)	الْلايْل
nine.....	(tis'ah)	تِسْعَة
nineteen.....	(ah-shar) (tis'ah)	تِسْعَة عَشْر
ninety.....	(tis'oon)	تِسْعُون



no, not ..... (la) لا  
 no entrance. (mem-noo)(ah-dook-hool) المَدْخُولُ مَمْنُوعٌ  
 no exit. (mem-noo)(al-hoo-roozh) المَخْرُوجُ مَمْنُوعٌ  
 north. (eh-sheh-mel) الشَّمَالُ  
 nothing. (shay')(eye)...(la) لا...أَيُّ شَيْءٍ  
 November ..... (noo-wen-br) نُوْونِبَرُ  
 now ..... (al-ann) الآنَ  
 number. (rahq-m) رَقْمٌ  
 numbers (the) ..... (al-aar-qaam) الأَرْقَامُ

## O

occupied ..... (mahsh-rool) مَشْغُولٌ  
 October ..... (ook-too-br) أُكْتُوبِرُ  
 of ..... (me-na) مِنْ  
 office. (mahk-tahb) مَكْتَبٌ  
 old, large ..... (ka-beer) كَبِيرٌ  
 old ..... (qa-deem) قَدِيمٌ  
 olives ..... (zy-toon) زَيْتُونٌ  
 Oman ..... (roo-maan) عُمانُ  
 on ..... (ah-la) عَلَى  
 once more ..... (ook-ra) (mar-ra) مَرَّةً أُخْرَى  
 one ..... (waa-Hahd) وَاحِدٌ  
 one-way ..... (ee-yeb) (ow) (da-haab) نَهَابٌ أَوْ إِتَابٌ  
 open ..... (mef-tooH) مَفْتُوحٌ  
 or ..... (ow) أَوْ  
 orange (color) ..... (boor-too-qaal-lee) بُرْتُقَالِي  
 orange (fruit). (boor-too-qaal) بُرْتُقَالٌ  
 out of ..... (haa-ree-zha) خَارِجٌ  
 over, above ..... (fao-qa) فَوْقٌ  
 overcoat, raincoat ..... (meer-Tahf) مِعْطَفٌ

## P

package ..... (Tard) طَرْدٌ  
 page ..... (ssahf-Ha) صَفْحَةٌ  
 paintings ..... (lao-Het) لَوْحَاتٌ  
 pajamas ..... (noum) (meh-leh-bes) مَلَابِيسُ نَوْمٍ  
 Palestine ..... (fa-les-Teen) فِلَسْطِينُ  
 paper, piece of paper ..... (wa-ra-qa) وَرْقَةٌ  
 parents (the) ..... (al-weh-lee-dane) الوَالِدَيْنِ  
 parking lot, station ..... (al-ma-HahT-Ta) المَخَطَّةُ  
 passport ..... (sa-far) (zhao-wez) جَوَازُ سَفَرٍ  
 pastries, small cakes ..... (Hel-wa) خَلْوَى  
 pen, pencil ..... (qa-lahm) قَلَمٌ  
 pepper ..... (ahs-wed) (fool-fool) فُلْفُلٌ أَسْوَدٌ  
 perfume ..... (reh-Tur) عِطْرٌ  
 pharmacy ..... (ah-sy-da-lee-ya) المِثْبَلِيَّةُ  
 phone card .....  
 ... (teh-lee-foo-nee-ya)(be-Taa-qa) بَطَّاقَةٌ تَلِفُونِيَّةٌ

picture ..... (ssoo-ra) صُورَةٌ  
 pillow ..... (we-seh-da) وِسَادَةٌ  
 pink ..... (zeh-ree) زَهْرِيٌّ  
 plate ..... (Ta-bahq) طَبَقٌ  
 pleasant ..... (la-Teef) لَطِيفٌ  
 please (♠) ..... (fahD-lik) (min) مِنْ فَضْلِكَ  
 please (♠) ..... (fahD-lahk) (min) مِنْ فَضْلِكَ  
 police station ..... (ah-shoor-Ta) الشَّرْطَةُ  
 poor ..... (fa-qeer) فُقِيرٌ  
 porcelain ..... البَيْلُورُ  
 post office. (al-ba-reed) (mahk-tahb) مَكْتَبُ البَرِيدِ  
 postcard ..... (be-Taa-qa) بَطَّاقَةٌ  
 poultry ..... (da-zhaazh) دِجَاجٌ  
 printer ..... (Teh-baa-ra) (aa-lit) آلَةٌ طِبَاعَةٌ  
 public phone / booth .....  
 ..... (roo-moo-me) (haa-tif) هَاتِفٌ عُمُومِيٌّ  
 pull ..... (ear-lahq) إِغْلَقْ  
 push ..... (if-taH) إِفْتَحْ  
 Pyramids (the) ..... (al-ah-raam) الأَهْرَامُ

## Q / R

Qatar ..... (qa-Tar) قَطْرٌ  
 quarter (time) ..... (ah-roo-boy) الرُّبْعُ  
 question ..... (soo-wel) سَوْأَلٌ  
 questions ..... (es-ee-la) أَسْئَلَةٌ  
 radios ..... مَزَايِيعٌ  
 rainy ..... (moom-Tair) مُمَطِرٌ  
 razor ..... (shahf-ra) شَفْرَةٌ  
 receipt (the) ..... (ah-wa-ssil) الوَصْلُ  
 red ..... (aH-mar) أَحْمَرٌ  
 refrigerator ..... (tha-laa-zha) ثَلَاجَةٌ  
 relatives (the) ..... (al-ah-qaar-rib) الأَقْرَابُ  
 religion ..... (deen) دِينٌ  
 repeat! (♠) ..... (ah-ree-dee) أَعِيدِي  
 repeat! (♠) ..... (ah-rid) أَعِدْ  
 restaurant ..... (ma-Tahm) مَطْعَمٌ  
 rich ..... (ruh-nee) غَنِيٌّ  
 right ..... (ya-meen) يَمِينٌ  
 road / freeway ..... (Ta-reeq) طَرِيقٌ  
 room ..... (roor-fa) عُرْفَةٌ  
 round-trip ..... (ee-yeb) (wa) (da-haab) نَهَابٌ وَ إِتَابٌ  
 rugs, carpets ..... (sahzh-zeh-det) سَجَادَاتٌ

## S

salad ..... (sa-la-Ta) سَلَطَةٌ  
 salt ..... (melH) مِلْحٌ  
 sandals / slippers ..... (nahl) نَعْلٌ  
 Saturday ..... (ah-sahbt) السَّبْتُ

Saudi Arabia .....  
 ... (ah-sau-dee-ya) (al-r-ra-be-ya) العَرَبِيَّة السُّعُودِيَّة  
 school ..... (ma-dra-sa) مَدْرَسَة  
 sea (the) ..... (al-ba-Har) البَحْر  
 seat ..... (koor-see) كُرْسِي  
 second (number) ..... (ah-thaa-nee) الثَّانِي  
 second floor .....  
 ..... (ah-thaa-nee) (ah-Taa-bahq) الطَّابِق الثَّانِي  
 second (time) ..... (thaa-nee-ya) ثَانِيَة  
 September ..... (seb-tem-br) سِبْتَمْبَر  
 service charge (al-hid-ma) (roo-soom) رُسُوم الخِدْمَة  
 seven ..... (sahb'ah) سَبْعَة  
 seventeen ..... (ah-shar)(sahb'ah) سَبْعَة عَشْر  
 seventy ..... (sahb'oon) سَبْعُونَ  
 she, it (♀) ..... (he-ah) هِيَ  
 shirt / T-shirt ..... (qa-meess) قَمِيص  
 shoes ..... (He-dair') حذاء  
 shopping center ... (mar-ka-zee)(sook) سَوْق مَرْكَزِي  
 short ..... (qa-sseer) قَصِير  
 shorts ..... (short) شُورْت  
 shower ..... (rahsh-shair-sha) رَشَّاشَة  
 sick ..... (ma-reeD) مَرِيض  
 sink / washstand ..... (meer-sahl) مِغْسَل  
 sister ..... (ohkt) أُخْت  
 six ..... (seet-teh) سِتَّة  
 six (o'clock) ..... (ah-saa-dee-sa) السَّائِسَة  
 sixteen ..... (ah-shar)(seet-teh) سِتَّة عَشْر  
 sixty ..... (seet-toon) سِتُّون  
 size ..... (qee-yes) قِيَاس  
 skirt ..... (tahn-noo-ra) ثَوْب / تَنْوَرَة  
 slow ..... (ba-Tee') بَطِيء  
 slowly ..... (be-booT') بِيْطِء  
 small ..... (ssa-greer) صَغِير  
 small street ..... (za-na-qa) زَنْقَة / (zoo-qaak) زَنْقَاك  
 snowy ..... (mooth-leezh) مُمْثَلِج  
 soap ..... (ssaa-boon) صَابُون  
 socks ..... (zha-wear-rib) جَوَارِب  
 sofa ..... (ka-na-ba) كَنْبَة / (ah-ree-ka) أَرِيكَة  
 son ..... (ibn) ابْن  
 soup ..... (shoor-ba) شُورْبَة  
 souvenir ..... (teth-kaar) تِذْكَار  
 south ..... (al-zha-noob) الجَنُوب  
 Spanish ..... (al-ees-baa-nee-ya) الإسْبَانِيَّة  
 spoon ..... (mil'a-qa) مِلْعَقَة  
 spring (the) ..... (ar-ra-be-ya) الرِّبْع  
 stamp ..... (Taa-bahh) طَابَع  
 stationery ..... خَطَّة

steamed ..... (moo-bahk-ka-ra) مُبْحَرَة  
 stop ..... (qef) قِف  
 stores (the) ..... (al-ma-Ha-laah) المَحَلَّات  
 stove ..... (foorn) فُورْن  
 straight ahead ..... (tool) (ah-la) عَلى طَول  
 street (big) ..... (sheh-re') شَارِع  
 study (the) ..... (al-mahk-tahb) العَلْم  
 Sudan ..... (ah-soo-daan) السُّودَان  
 suit ..... (beed-la) بَدَلَة  
 suitcase ..... (Ha-qee-ba) حَقِيْبَة  
 summer (the) ..... (ah-ssife) الحَمِيْف  
 Sunday ..... (al-ah-Hahd) الأَحَد  
 sunglasses .....  
 ..... (shem-see-ya) (naTh-Thaa-ra) نَظَّارَة شَمْسِيَّة  
 sweater ..... (qa-meess) قَمِيص  
 swimsuit ..... (see-baa-Ha)(leh-bes) لِبَاس سِبْلَاحَة  
 Syria ..... (soo-ree-yaa) سُورِيَا

## T

table ..... (Taa-we-la) طَاوِلَة  
 tailor (♂) ..... (hy-yaa-Ta) خَيْطَلَة  
 tailor (♀) ..... (hy-yaaT) خَيْطَاط  
 tall, long ..... (Ta-weel) طَوِيل  
 taxi ..... (taak-see) تَاكْسِي  
 tea ..... (shay) شَاي  
 telephone .. (teh-lee-foon) تَلِيْفُون / (haa-tif) هَاتِف  
 telephone book .....  
 ..... (ah-teh-lee-foon) (kee-taab) كِتَاب التَّلِيْفُون  
 television ..... (teh-lee-fiz-own) تَلِيْفِزْيُون  
 ten (♂) ..... (ah-sha-ra) عَشْرَة  
 ten (♀) ..... (ah-shar) عَشْر  
 tennis shoes ..... (ree-yaa-Da) (He-dair') حذاء رِيَاضَة  
 tent ..... (hy-ma) خَيْمَة  
 thank you ..... (shook-rahn) شُكْرًا  
 thank you very much .....  
 ..... (zha-zee-lahn) (shook-rahn) شُكْرًا جَزِيلًا  
 there is / there are ..... (hoo-na-ka) هُنَاك  
 these, this (♂) ..... (heh-da-he) هَذِهِ  
 they ..... (hoom) هُمْ  
 things ..... (eh-shee') أَشْيَاء  
 third (number) ..... (ah-thaa-leeth) الثَّلَاث  
 third (time) ..... (ah-thoo-looth) الثَّلَاث  
 thirteen ..... (ah-shar) (tha-laa-tha) ثَلَاثَة عَشْر  
 thirty ..... (tha-laa-thoon) ثَلَاثُونَ  
 this (♂) ..... (heh-da-he) هَذِهِ  
 this (♀) ..... (heh-daa) هَذَا  
 this fits ..... (qee-yeh-sook)(heh-daa) هَذَا قِيَاسُكَ

thousand (one).....	(alf) ألف
three.....	(tha-laa-tha) ثلاثة
three hundred.....	(tha-laa-thoo-me-ya) ثلاثمائة
Thursday.....	(al-ha-mees) الخميس
ticket.....	(teth-kee-ra) تذكرة
tie.....	(rahb-Ta) رِبْطَة
timetable (the).....	(ah-tao-qeet) التَّوْقِيت
to.....	(ee-la) إلى
to enter.....	(dahk-ha-la) نَحَلْ
to exit.....	(ha-ra-zha) خَرَجْ
tobacco.....	سِجَائِر
today, the day.....	(al-yohm) النَّوْم
toilet.....	(Hahm-maam) حَمَام
token.....	(noo-qood)(qeh-Tart) قِطْعَة نُقُود
tomatoes.....	(Ta-maa-Tem) طَمَاعِمْ
tomorrow.....	(reh-dahn) غَدًا
tools.....	مُوعِذَات
toothbrush.....	(foor-shet) فُرْشَاة
toothpaste(al-es-naan).....	(ma-zhoon) مَعْجُونِ الْأَسْنَان
tourist (♠).....	(saa-ee-Ha) سَائِحَة
tourist (♠).....	(saa-eH) سَائِح
towels.....	(foo-ahT) فُوط
train.....	(qee-Taar) قِطَار
train station.....	مَحْطَة القِطَار
.....	(al-qee-Taar) (ma-HahT-Taht)
travel, trip.....	(sa-far) سَفَر
travel agency.....	(sa-far) (mahk-tahb) مَكْتَب سَفَر
traveler.....	(moo-seh-fer) مُسَافِر
traveler's checks.....	(sa-far) (shee-ket) شِيكَات سَفَر
trousers / jeans / shorts.....	(seer-wel) سِرْوَال
Tuesday.....	(ah-thoo-la-thaa') الثلاثاء
Tunisia.....	(too-noos) تُونِس
twelve.....	(ah-shar) (ith-naa) اثْنَا عَشْر
twenty ..	(aysh-roon) عِشْرُون / عِشْرُون
two.....	(ith-nayn) اِثْنَيْن

## U / V

U.S.A. (the).....	(ahm-ree-kaa) أَمْرِيكَا
umbrella.....	(me-Thahl-la) مِظَلَّة
uncle.....	(ahm) عَم
under.....	(taH-ta) تَحْت
underclothing.....	مَلَابِيس دَاخِلِيَّة
.....	(daak-he-lee-ya) (meh-leh-bes)
university.....	(zhaa-me-ah) جَامِعَة
upstairs (the).....	الطَّابِقِ الْعُلْوِي
.....	(al-rool-we)(ah-Taa-bahq)
vegetables.....	(hoo-Daar) خُضَار

very.....	(zhid-dahn) جَدًّا
village.....	(qar-ya) قَرْيَة

## W

waiter (oh)!	(sy-yed) (yaa) يَا سَيِّد
waitress (oh)!	(sy-yeh-da) (yaa) يَا سَيِّدَة
wallet.....	(mehH-fa-Tha) مِحْفَظَة
wastepaper basket.....	(sahl-la) سَلَّة
water.....	(maa') مَاء
we.....	(naH-noo) نَحْنُ
we have.....	(rin-da-naa) عِنْدَنَا
we want.....	(noo-ree-do) نُرِيدُ
weather (the).....	(al-zhao) الْجَوُّ
Wednesday.....	(al-ar-ba-aa') الْأَرْبِعَاء
week (the).....	(al-oos-boo') الْأَسْبُوع
west.....	(al-greb) الْغَرْب
what.....	(may-daa) مَاذَا
what.....	(maa) مَا
What is your name?.....	(ees-mook)(maa) مَا إِسْمُكَ؟
What time is it?.....	(ah-saa-ra) (kem) كَمْ السَّاعَة؟
when.....	(rin-da-maa) عِنْدَمَا
when (in questions).....	(meh-ta) مَتَى
where.....	(eye-na) أَيْنَ
which.....	(eye-yoo) أَيُّ
white.....	(ah-be-yahD) أَبْيَض
who.....	(men) مَن
why.....	(lee-may-daa) لِمَاذَا
wind.....	(ree-yaaH) رِيَاح
window.....	(neh-fee-da) نَافِذَة
winter (the).....	(ah-shee-taa') الشِّتَاء
with.....	(mar) مَعَ
without.....	(be-doon) بِدُون
women's clothing.....	مَلَابِيسِ النِّسَاء
word.....	(ka-lee-ma) كَلِمَة
write out! (♠).....	(eek-toob) اِكْتُبْ

## Y

year (the).....	(ah-seh-na) السَّنَة
yellow.....	(ahss-far) أَصْفَر
Yemen.....	(al-yeh-men) اليَمَن
yes.....	(na-ahm) نَعَمْ
yesterday.....	(ahms) أَمْس
you (♠).....	(n-ta) أَنْتَ
you (♠).....	(n-tee) أَنْتِ
you all.....	(ahn-toom) أَنْتُمْ
you're welcome.....	(ahf-wahn) غَفْوًا
young.....	(ssa-greer) صَغِير
zero.....	(sif-fur) صِفْر

This Beverage Guide is intended to explain the variety of beverages available to you while

traveling <sup>(al-ha-leezh)</sup> في الخليج <sup>(ef-roo-qee-yaa)</sup> أو أفريقيا <sup>(sheh-mel)</sup> أو شمال <sup>(al-ow-saht)</sup> الشرق الأوسط <sup>(ah-shark)</sup> في <sup>(fee)</sup> ← It is by no means

complete. Some of the experimenting has been left up to you, but this should get you started.

<sup>(saak-hih-na)</sup> ← مَشْرُوبَات ساخنة <sup>(mahsh-roo-baat)</sup>  
hot beverages

coffee .....	قهوة
coffee with cream .....	قهوة مع كريم
black coffee .....	قهوة سوداء
Turkish coffee .....	قهوة تركية
espresso .....	قهوة مُعَصَّرة



tea .....	شاي
tea with milk .....	شاي مع حليب
tea with lemon .....	شاي مع ليمون
mint tea .....	شاي بالنعناع
spiced tea .....	شاي مُعَطَّر
hot chocolate .....	شوكولاتة ساخنة

tisane .....	اللوزية
pomegranate syrup .....	شَرَاب الرُّمَّان
rosewater syrup .....	شَرَاب الوَرْد
wine .....	نبيذ
beer .....	بيرة
arak .....	عرق
ice cubes .....	مُكَّعَبَات
bottle .....	أنية

<sup>(bear-ee-da)</sup> ← مَشْرُوبَات باردة <sup>(mahsh-roo-baat)</sup>  
cold beverages

mineral water .....	ماء طبيعي
soda water .....	ماء غازي
lemonade .....	عَصِير لَيْمُون
milk .....	حليب



<sup>(fa-waa-kih)</sup> ← عَصِير فَوَاكِه <sup>(ra-sser)</sup>  
fruit juice

You can buy a glass of freshly-squeezed juice from street vendors. It's delicious!

orange juice .....	عَصِير بُرْتُقَال
apple juice .....	عَصِير تَفَّاح
prune juice .....	عَصِير بَرَقُوق
apricot juice .....	عَصِير مِشْمِش
peach juice .....	عَصِير خَوْخ
tomato juice .....	عَصِير طَمَاطِم



The coffee house is an institution! Sit outside at one of the sidewalk cafes and sample one of the many varieties of coffee.

## خضار vegetables

zucchini  
carrots  
potatoes  
green peas  
peppers  
cucumber  
tomatoes  
eggplant  
green beans  
onions  
parsley  
garlic

chicken  
quail  
turkey  
goose  
pigeon  
chicken with  
lemon and olives

كوسة  
جزر  
بطاطس  
بازلاء  
فلفل  
خيار  
طماطم  
بانجنان  
فاصوليا خضراء  
بصل  
بقدرونس  
ثوم

braewat  
ice-cream  
fekkas  
sweets  
fruit salad  
fruit cake  
baklava

حلويات  
desserts  
بريوات  
ايس كريم / بوضه  
فككاس  
حلويات  
سلطة فواكه  
قطيرة فواكه  
بقلاوة

## Specialties

hummus  
tehina  
stuffed vine leaves  
couscous  
falafel  
bastilla  
tagine  
mixed pistachios with  
peanuts, butter  
and sugar  
crepes  
baba ganoush  
dates stuffed with  
nuts, served  
with cold milk

حمص  
طحينة  
ورق عنب محشوة  
كوسكوس  
فلافل  
بسطيلة  
طجين  
خليط من  
المكسرات والربدة  
والسكّر  
فطائر  
بابا غنوش  
تمر محشو  
بالمكسرات، يُقدّم  
مع خليب بارد

## لائحة الأكل the menu



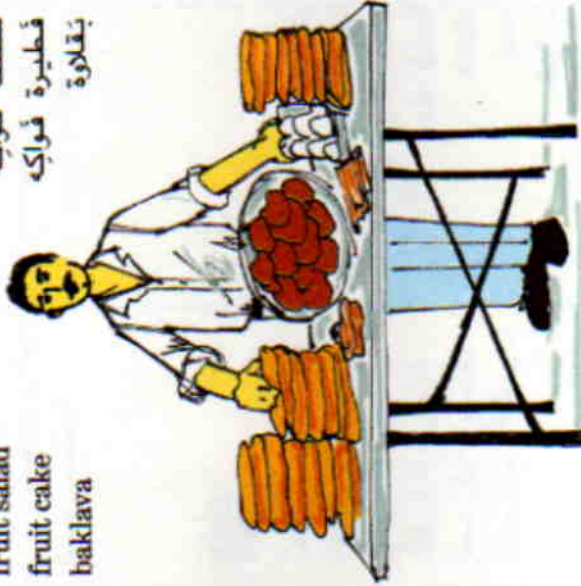
## عام general

jam  
butter  
honey  
salt  
pepper  
vinegar  
oil  
ketchup  
cheese  
olives  
olive oil  
almonds  
cake  
fresh nuts  
dried nuts  
sandwich  
pancakes  
raisins  
french fries  
popcorn  
rice  
sugar  
mint  
chamomile  
steamed

مُرْتَمِي  
زُبْدَة  
عَسَل  
بَلح  
فَلْفَل أسود  
خَل  
زَيْت  
كَيْتْشَاب  
جُبْن  
زَيْتُون  
زَيْت الرُّيْتُون  
اللوز  
قَطِيرَة  
مُكْسَرَات طَبْرِيَة  
مُكْسَرَات مُجَقَّفَة  
سَاطِيرَة / ساندويتش  
فَطَائِر  
عِنَب  
بَطْلَطِس مَقْلِيَة  
فَشَار  
رِز  
سُكَّر  
تَعْنَاع  
مُرْفَة  
مُنْبَر

FOLD HERE

FOLD HERE



(Ty-yea-ba) (wehah-ba)  
وَجِبَة طَبْرِيَة  
enjoy your meal

vegetables and spices  
olives with vegetables  
and spices  
stuffed tomatoes  
minced meat wrapped  
in pastry  
sardines

مُقبلات  
appetizers  
حُضار وثرابيل  
زيتون مع  
حُضار وثرابيل  
طماطم محشوة  
كفتة محشوة  
سنگ الثورين

clear broth  
harara  
chicken soup  
lentil soup  
mushroom soup  
onion soup  
pea soup  
tomato soup  
vegetable soup

شورية  
سوپ  
جساء  
خريزة  
شورية باللجاج  
شورية بالعدس  
شورية بالبطريجات  
شورية بالبيصل  
شورية بالبرازة  
شورية بالطماطم  
شورية بالخضار

white bread  
whole wheat bread  
black bread  
baguette  
rolls  
special bread  
loaf  
round  
flat  
pita (flat)

خبز  
bread  
خبز أبيض  
خبز القمح  
خبز أسود  
خبز فرنسي  
خبز مندور  
خبز خاص  
خبز خاص  
خبز مندور  
خبز مفلطح  
خبز مفلطح  
خبز مفلطح

FOLD HERE

calamari  
salmon  
shrimp  
sole  
tuna  
white fish

سنگ  
fish  
كلماري  
سالمون  
شريم / جمبري  
صول  
تونة  
سنگ أبيض

hard-boiled egg  
fried egg  
omelette with tomatoes  
and onions  
scrambled eggs

بيض مُصلوق  
بيض مقلي  
بيض مقلي  
بالطماطم و البصل  
بيض مخلوط

lamb  
lamb shoulder  
lamb leg  
lamb ribs  
steak  
veal  
kebab  
shawarmah  
goulash  
meatballs  
mechoui (BBQ)

لحم الخروف  
كتف الخروف  
رجل الخروف  
جذوع الخروف  
لحم بقرة مُصنّف  
لحم رأس الخروف  
كباب  
شاورمة  
لحم العوز  
كفتة  
مشموي

FOLD HERE

carrot salad  
cucumber salad  
eggplant salad  
green salad  
potato salad  
tomato salad  
zucchini salad

سالم  
سالمة جزر  
سالمة خيار  
سالمة بلانجان  
سالمة خضراء  
سالمة بطاطس  
سالمة طماطم  
سالمة كوسة

apples  
apricots  
bananas  
cantaloupe  
cherries  
dates  
figs  
grapefruit  
grapes  
lemons  
mandarin oranges  
nuts  
oranges  
peaches  
pears  
plums  
pomegranates  
prunes  
strawberries  
watermelon

فواكه  
fruit  
تفاح  
مشمش  
موز / بنان  
بليخ أصفر  
كوز  
تفاح  
تين  
بريقال أحمر  
عنب  
ليمون  
بوسلفي  
مكشورات  
بريقال  
خوخ  
إخاص  
برقوق  
زنان  
جاف  
فراولة  
بليخ أحمر

(ah-naa)

أَنَا

(hoo-wa)

هُوَ

(he-ah)

هِيَ

(naH-noo)

نَحْنُ

(n-tee)

أَنْتِ

(hoom)

هُمْ

(n-ta)

أَنْتَ

(esh-ta-ree)

أَشْتَرِي

(ah-ta-rahl-la-moo)

أَتَعَلَّمُ

(oor-ee-do)

أَعِيدُ

(ahf-ha-moo)

أَفْهَمُ

(ah-ta-kel-la-moo)

أَتَكَلَّمُ

he

I

we

she

they

you (♂)

I buy

you (♂)

I repeat

I learn

I speak

I understand



(es-koo-noo)  
أَسْكُنُ

(ah-ssee-loo)  
أَصِلُ

(ah-ra)  
أَرَى

(ah-qoo-loo)  
أَقُولُ

(ee-la) (ahd-ha-boo)  
أَذْهَبُ إِلَى

(ahb-qa)  
أَبْقَى

(aa-koo-loo)  
أَكُلُ

(ahsh-ra-boo)  
أَشْرَبُ

(oo-ree-do)  
أُرِيدُ

(ee-la) (aH-teh-zhoo)  
أَحْتَاجُ إِلَى

(ees-me)  
إِسْمِي ...

(lee)  
لِي

I arrive

I live

I say

I see

I stay

I go to

I drink

I eat

I need

I want

I have . . .

my name is . . .

(ah-be-roo)

أَبِيعُ

(oor-see-loo)

أُرْسِلُ

(ah-naa-moo)

أَنَامُ

(be) (aht-ta-ssee-loo)

أَتَّصِلُ بِ...

(ah-Tee-nee)

أَعْطِينِي

(ahk-too-boo)

أَكْتُبُ

(ah-zhee-oo)

أَجِيءُ

(theh-men) (ahd-fa-roo)

أَدْفَعُ ثَمَنَ ...

(ah-ree-foo)

أَعْرِفُ

(ah-soo-qoo)

أَسْوَقُ

(ahq-ra-oo)

أَقْرَأُ

(oo-seh-fee-roo)

أَسَافِرُ

I send

I sell

I phone

I sleep

I write

give me . . .

I pay for . . .

I come

I drive

I know

I travel

I read

(ahn)

(ahs-ta-Tee-roo)

أَسْتَطِيعُ أَنْ

(oo-raa-dee-roo)

أُغَادِرُ

(ahd-hoo-loo)

أَدْخُلُ

(hoo-naa-ka)

هُنَاكَ

(aH-zee-moo)

أَحْزَمُ

(rin-dee)

عِنْدِي

(ahf-wahn)

عَفْوًا

(aH-zhee-zoo)

أَحْجِزُ

(ah-droo-soo)

أَدْرُسُ

(ar-see-loo)

أَغْسِلُ

(ahn)

(yeh-zhee-boo)

يَجِبُ أَنْ

(yek-hoo-Doo)

يَأْخُذُ

I leave

I can

there is / there are

I enter

I have

I pack

I reserve

you're welcome

I wash

I study

it takes

it must be (that) . . .

(Haa-lahk) (kay-fa)  
كَيْفَ حَالِكَ؟

(Haa-lik) (kay-fa)  
كَيْفَ حَالِكِ؟

(mar-Ha-boo)  
مَرْحَبًا

(fahD-lahk) (min)  
مِنْ فَضْلِكَ

(fahD-lik) (min)  
مِنْ فَضْلِكِ

(eh-sif)  
أَسِفٌ

(eh-sik-fa)  
أَسِيفَةٌ

(ah-zoo-roo)  
أَزُورُ

(al-yohm)  
الْيَوْمَ

(reh-dahn)  
غَدًا

(ahms)  
أَمْسَ

(be-kem)  
بِكُمْ؟

(rin-da-ka) (hel)  
هَلْ عِنْدَكَ...؟

(rin-da-kee) (hel)  
هَلْ عِنْدِكِ...؟

(mef-tooH) (moog-lahq)  
مُغْلَقٌ - مَفْتُوحٌ

(ka-beer) (ssa-greer)  
صَغِيرٌ - كَبِيرٌ

hello

How are you?

excuse me / I'm sorry

please

today

I visit

yesterday

tomorrow

Do you have . . . ?

How much does  
this cost?

big/old - small/young

open - closed



(sseH-He)

(ma-reeD)

مَرِيضٌ - صِحِّي

(zhy-yed)

(Dy-eef)

ضَعِيفٌ - جَيِّدٌ

(Har)

(bear-id)

بَارِدٌ - حَارٌّ

(qa-sseer)

(Ta-weel)

طَوِيلٌ - قَصِيرٌ

(ahf-ah-loo)

أَفْعَلٌ

(fao-qa)

(taH-ta)

تَحْتَ - فَوْقَ

(ya-saar)

(ya-meen)

يَمِينٌ - يَسَارٌ

(sa-reer)

(ba-Tee')

بَطِيءٌ - سَرِيعٌ

(al-rool-we)

(ah-Taa-bahq)

الطَّابِقُ العُلَوِي -

(ah-soo-flee)

(ah-Taa-bahq)

الطَّابِقُ السُّفْلِي

(tha-meen)

(ra-keess)

رَخِيسٌ - ثَمِينٌ

(ruh-nee)

(fa-qeer)

فَقِيرٌ - غَنِيٌّ

(ka-thee-rahn)

(qa-lee-lahn)

قَلِيلٌ - كَثِيرٌ

good - bad

healthy - sick

short - long / tall

hot - cold

over - under

I do

slow - fast

left - right

expensive - inexpensive

upstairs -  
downstairs

a lot - a little

rich - poor

Now that  
you've finished...

*Congratulations*

**You've done it!**

You've completed all the Steps, stuck your labels, flashed your cards and cut out your menu guide. Do you realize how far you've come and how much you've learned?

**You can now confidently**

- ask questions,
- understand directions,
- make reservations,
- order food and
- shop anywhere.

And you can do it all in a foreign language! You can now go anywhere — from a large cosmopolitan restaurant to a small, out-of-the-way village where no one speaks English. Your experiences will be much more enjoyable and worry-free now that you speak the language.

Yes, learning a foreign language can be fun.

*Kristine Kershul*

Kristine Kershul

Send us this order form with your check, money order or credit card details. If paying by credit card, you may fax your order to (206) 284-3660 or call us toll-free at (800) 488-5068. All prices are in US dollars and are subject to change without notice.

**\* What about shipping costs?**

STANDARD DELIVERY per address

If your items total	please add
up to \$ 20.00	\$5.00
\$20.01 - \$ 40.00	\$6.00
\$40.01 - \$ 60.00	\$7.00
\$60.01 - \$ 80.00	\$8.00
\$80.01 - \$ 100.00	\$9.00

If over \$100, please call for charges.

For shipping outside the U.S., please call, fax or e-mail us at info@bbks.com for the best-possible shipping rates.

طلب  
order form

10 minutes a day® Series	QTY.	PRICE	TOTAL
ARABIC in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
CHINESE in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
FRENCH in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
GERMAN in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
HEBREW in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
INGLÉS en 10 minutos al día*		\$19.95	
ITALIAN in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
JAPANESE in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
NORWEGIAN in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
PORTUGUESE in 10 minutes a day*		\$18.95	
RUSSIAN in 10 minutes a day*		\$19.95	
SPANISH in 10 minutes a day*		\$18.95	

10 minutes a day® AUDIO	QTY.	PRICE	TOTAL
FRENCH in 10 minutes a day® AUDIO		\$59.95	
FRENCH AUDIO CDs only (no book)		\$42.95	
ITALIAN in 10 minutes a day® AUDIO		\$59.95	
ITALIAN AUDIO CDs only (no book)		\$42.95	
SPANISH in 10 minutes a day® AUDIO		\$59.95	
SPANISH AUDIO CDs only (no book)		\$42.95	

Language Map® Series	QTY.	PRICE	TOTAL
ARABIC a language map*		\$7.95	
CHINESE a language map*		\$7.95	
FRENCH a language map*		\$7.95	
GERMAN a language map*		\$7.95	
GREEK a language map*		\$7.95	
HAWAIIAN a language map*		\$7.95	
HEBREW a language map*		\$7.95	
INGLÉS un mapa del lenguaje*		\$7.95	
ITALIAN a language map*		\$7.95	
JAPANESE a language map*		\$7.95	
NORWEGIAN a language map*		\$7.95	
POLISH a language map*		\$7.95	
PORTUGUESE a language map*		\$7.95	
RUSSIAN a language map*		\$7.95	
SPANISH a language map*		\$7.95	
VIETNAMESE a language map*		\$7.95	

† For delivery to individuals in Washington State, you must add 8.8% sales tax on the item total and the shipping costs combined. If your order is being delivered outside Washington State, you do not need to add sales tax.	Item Total	
	* Shipping	+
	Total	
	† Sales Tax	+
	<b>ORDER TOTAL</b>	

Name \_\_\_\_\_  
 Address \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 City \_\_\_\_\_ State \_\_\_\_\_ Zip \_\_\_\_\_  
 Day Phone ( \_\_\_\_\_ ) \_\_\_\_\_

My check or money order for \$ \_\_\_\_\_ is enclosed.  
 Please make checks and money orders payable to Bilingual Books, Inc.

Bill my credit card     VISA     MC     AMEX

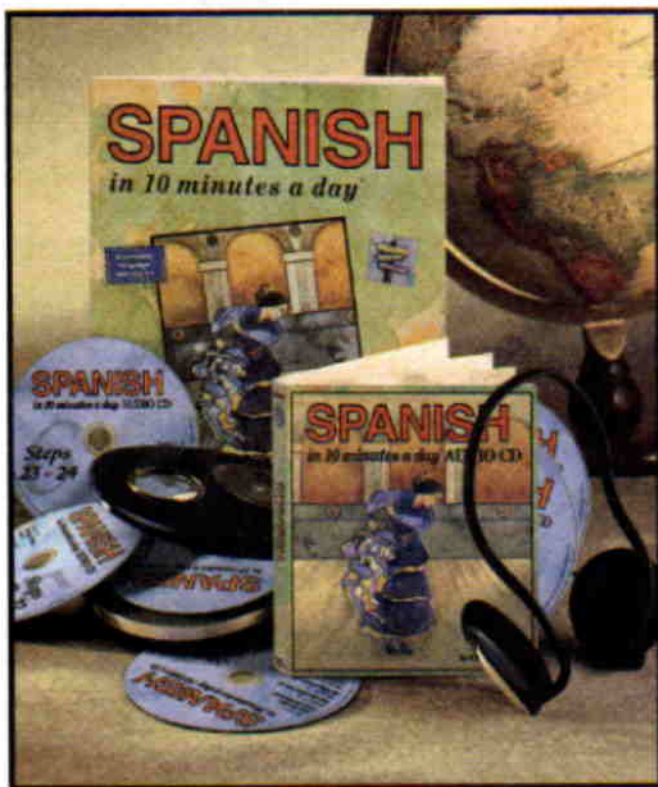
No. \_\_\_\_\_ Exp. date \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

Signature \_\_\_\_\_

**Bilingual Books, Inc. • 1719 West Nickerson Street  
 Seattle, WA 98119 USA**

## 10 minutes a day® AUDIO

by Kristine K. Kershul



The *10 minutes a day*® AUDIO is based on the immensely successful *10 minutes a day*® Series. Millions of people around the world have used the *10 minutes a day*® Series for over two decades.

- Eight hours of personal instruction on six CDs.
- Use the CDs in combination with the companion book, and maximize your progress as you see AND hear the language.
- Listen to native speakers and practice right along with them.
- Suitable for the classroom, the homeschooler, as well as business and leisure travelers.
- The CDs in the *10 minutes a day*® AUDIO may also be purchased separately from the *10 minutes a day*® books.

## Language Map® Series

by Kristine K. Kershul

These handy *Language Maps*® provide the essential words and phrases to cover the basics for any trip.

- Over 1,000 essential words and phrases divided into convenient categories.
- Laminated, folding design allows for quicker reference while resisting spills, tearing, and damage from frequent use.
- Durable, to hold up to being sat on, dropped, and stuffed into backpacks, pockets, and purses.
- An absolute must for anyone traveling abroad or studying at home.

For a list of available languages and ordering information, please see the order form on the previous page.



## About the Author

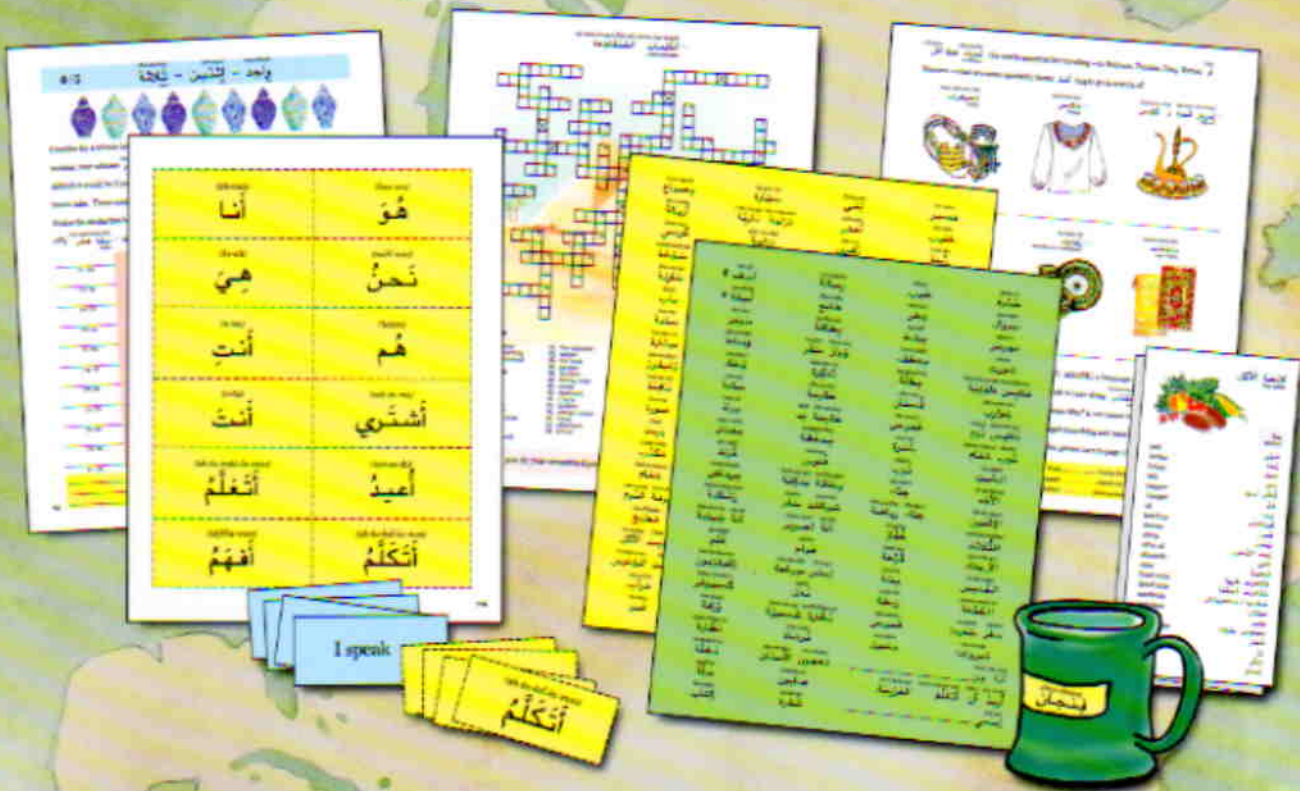
Kristine K. Kershul brings her experience as both a teacher and a world traveler to the *10 minutes a day*<sup>®</sup> Series and the *Language Map*<sup>®</sup> Series.

As a teacher, she avoids the biggest problems and frustrations which students generally encounter in learning foreign languages. As a seasoned traveler who has traversed the globe and lived abroad for several years, she knows what travelers need to be able to say.

She has combined her varied experiences into the very successful *10 minutes a day*<sup>®</sup> Series and the *Language Map*<sup>®</sup> Series, so students of all ages can easily learn to speak a foreign language, avoid errors and have a pleasant trip. Both Series capture the spirit of their author: fun, innovative and effective.



Included in this book are these effective study aids to help you learn your new language:



### Flash Cards

Cut these out and whenever you have a free moment, flip through them to review the vocabulary introduced in this book.

### Sticky Labels

Label over 150 items in your home, classroom or office. Every time you see these sticky labels you will be learning your new language without any extra time or effort.

### Games & Quizzes

Each Step has its own special element of fun – word games, crossword puzzles and much more.

**Plus, it's practical, fast, easy . . . and it works!**

### Products from Bilingual Books:



### Languages available:

- Arabic • Chinese • French • German • Hebrew • Inglés (English for Spanish speakers) • Italian • Japanese • Norwegian • Portuguese • Russian • Spanish

ISBN-13: 978-0-944502-40-2  
 ISBN-10: 0-944502-40-7 \$19.95 U.S.

ARABIC

9 780944 502402

5 1 9 9 5

EAN

**Bilingual Books, Inc.**  
 1719 West Nickerson St.  
 Seattle, WA 98119  
 (800) 488-5068  
 (206) 284-4211  
[www.10minutesaday.com](http://www.10minutesaday.com)